

*Scripta Horticulturae*  
Number 10

# International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants

**Eighth Edition**



A PUBLICATION OF THE  
INTERNATIONAL SOCIETY FOR HORTICULTURAL SCIENCE



# INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS

*(ICNCP or Cultivated Plant Code)*

incorporating the Rules and Recommendations  
for naming plants in cultivation

Eighth Edition

*Adopted by the International Union of Biological Sciences  
International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants*

Prepared and edited by

C.D. Brickell (Commission Chairman), C. Alexander, J.C. David, W.L.A. Hetterscheid,  
A.C. Leslie, V. Malecot, Xiaobai Jin,  
members of the Editorial Committee  
& J.J. Cubey (Editorial Committee Secretary)

**October, 2009**



## ***Regnum Vegetabile***

A series of publications for the use of plant taxonomists published under the auspices of the International Association for Plant Taxonomy

Volume 151

ISSN 0800-0694

International Association for Plant Taxonomy

Institute of Botany, University of Vienna

Rennweg 14, A-1030 Vienna, Austria

E-mail: office@iapt-taxon.org

Web: <http://www.botanik.univie.ac.at/iapt>

## ***Scripta Horticulturae***

ISSN 1813-9205

ISBN 978 90 6605 662 6, *Scripta Horticulturae* Number 10

Published by ISHS, October 2009

Executive Director of ISHS: Ir. J. Van Assche

ISHS Secretariat, PO Box 500, 3001 Leuven 1, Belgium

Printed by Drukkerij Geers, Eeckhoutdriesstraat 67, 9041 Gent-Oostakker, Belgium

©2009 by the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS). All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced and/or published in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, microfilm and recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

### **Cover Photos**

A) 1 *Rudbeckia hirta* 'Prairie Sun'; 2 *Leucanthemum* × *superbum* 'T E Killin'; 3 *Gaillardia* 'Arizona Sun'; 4 *Aster* × *frikartii* 'Mönch'; 5 *Echinacea paradoxa*; 6 *Coreopsis* 'Astolat'; 7 *Leucanthemum* × *superbum* 'Northern Lights'; 8 *Helianthus* 'Lemon Queen'; 9 *Catanache caerulea*; 10 *Rudbeckia hirta* 'Brown Golden'; 11 *Osteospermum jucundum* 'Killerton Pink'; 12 *Helenium* 'Indianersommer'; 13 *Rudbeckia hirta* 'Maya'; 14 *Gaillardia* × *grandiflora* 'Burgunder'; 15 *Helenium* 'Sonnenwunder'; 16 *Heliopsis helianthoides* var. *scabra*; 17 *Helenium* 'Waltraut'; 18 *Inula magnifica*; 19 *Echinacea purpurea* dark-stemmed; 20 *Rudbeckia hirta* 'Indian Summer'

By courtesy of Tim Sandall/RHS The Garden

B) *Brassica oleracea* (Botrytis Group) Purple Cape  
V10 03-33/SL474

By courtesy of Jacquie Gray/RHS Herbarium

C) *Eucalyptus dalrympleana*

By courtesy of Janet Cubey/RHS Herbarium



## CONTENTS

Foreword	v
Membership of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants	viii
Preface	x
Comparison between the 2004 <i>Code</i> and this edition	xiv
New provisions	xvii
Important dates in this <i>Code</i>	xviii
Previous editions of this <i>Code</i>	xix
<b>PREAMBLE</b>	1
<b>DIVISION I: PRINCIPLES</b>	3
<b>DIVISION II: RULES AND RECOMMENDATIONS</b>	5
<b>Chapter I: General provisions</b>	5
<i>Article 1: Relationship with the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature</i>	5
<b>Chapter II: Definitions</b>	6
<i>Article 2: The cultivar</i>	6
<i>Article 3: The Group</i>	10
<i>Article 4: The grex</i>	12
<i>Article 5: The graft-chimaera</i>	12
<i>Article 6: The denomination class</i>	13
<i>Article 7: Publication</i>	14
<i>Article 8: Names and epithets</i>	14
<i>Article 9: Date of a name</i>	15
<i>Article 10: Established names</i>	15
<i>Article 11: Accepted names</i>	15
<i>Article 12: Conserved names</i>	17
<i>Article 13: Trade designations</i>	17
<b>Chapter III: Conventions for presentation of names</b>	19
<i>Article 14: Cultivar status</i>	19
<i>Article 15: Group status</i>	19
<i>Article 16: Grex status</i>	20
<i>Article 17: Trade designation status</i>	21
<b>Chapter IV: Limitation to the principle of priority</b>	22
<i>Article 18: Starting points in nomenclature</i>	22
<i>Article 19: Conservation of names</i>	22
<b>Chapter V: Naming plants in cultivation</b>	24
<i>Article 20: Names of wild plants brought into cultivation</i>	24

## Contents

<i>Article 21: Names of cultivars</i>	24
<i>Article 22: Names of Groups</i>	35
<i>Article 23: Names of grexes</i>	36
<i>Article 24: Names of graft-chimaeras</i>	37
<b>Chapter VI: Publication and establishment</b>	39
<i>Article 25: Conditions of publication</i>	39
<i>Article 26: Date of publication</i>	40
<i>Article 27: Conditions of establishment</i>	41
<i>Article 28: Citation of authors' names</i>	44
<b>Chapter VII: Choice, re-use, and rejection of names</b>	46
<i>Article 29: Choice of names</i>	46
<i>Article 30: Re-use of epithets</i>	47
<i>Article 31: Rejection of names</i>	48
<b>Chapter VIII: Translation, transliteration, and transcription</b>	51
<i>Article 32: Translation of epithets</i>	51
<i>Article 33: Transliteration of epithets</i>	52
<i>Article 34: Transcription of epithets</i>	53
<b>Chapter IX: Spelling (orthography)</b>	55
<i>Article 35: Spelling of epithets</i>	55
<b>DIVISION III: NAMES OF HYBRID GENERA</b>	59
<b>DIVISION IV: REGISTRATION OF NAMES</b>	62
<b>DIVISION V: NOMENCLATORIAL STANDARDS</b>	63
<b>DIVISION VI: MODIFICATION OF THIS CODE</b>	66
Appendix I: Directory of International Cultivar Registration Authorities	67
Appendix II: Directory of statutory plant registration authorities	84
Appendix III: Places maintaining nomenclatorial standards	97
Appendix IV: Libraries holding significant collections of nursery catalogues	101
Appendix V: Special denomination classes	105
Appendix VI: List of conserved and rejected epithets	107
Appendix VII: Latin names of plants	109
Appendix VIII: The nomenclatorial filter	113
Appendix IX: Quick guide for new cultivar names	127
Appendix X: Trade designations	131
Appendix XI: Flow chart of nomenclatorial bodies and processes	134
Glossary	135
Index to scientific names	158
Subject index	168

## FOREWORD

This eighth edition of the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* (2009) replaces the seventh edition of the *Code* which was published in February 2004 as *Acta Horticulturae* Vol. 647 and as *Regnum Vegetabile* Vol. 144.

The organisation of the Fifth International Symposium on the Taxonomy of Cultivated Plants held at Wageningen, The Netherlands from October 15-19, 2007, provided a focus for the International Commission members charged with revisions of the ICNCP to meet to consider proposals to amend the *Code* and to prepare a further edition to take into account the changing needs of users while ensuring that the basic Principles on which the *Code* is based are not comprised.

Prior to this Symposium requests for suggestions to amend the 2004 (Toronto) *Code* were sought from many interested individuals and organisations between 2006 and 2007 so that a very wide a range of views and opinions could be obtained for consideration by Commission members. Some proposals were published in *Hanburyana* (Vol.1, 2006: Vol.2, 2007) while many other submissions were made by e-mail. These were all collated and reproduced in the book of Abstracts circulated to those attending the Wageningen Symposium as well as to all Commission Members.

An open discussion on these proposals to amend the *Code* was held on the final day of the Symposium to obtain further input from delegates attending the meetings so that their views could also be considered by the Commission.

The Commission members then met on the following two days in the Wageningen Herbarium building to discuss, and where appropriate, vote on all the proposals put forward to amend the *Code*. An Editorial Committee composed of C.D. Brickell (Chairman), C. Alexander, J.C. David, W.L.A. Hetterscheid, A.C. Leslie, V. Malecot and Xiaobai Jin was then appointed to carry out the final editing of the *Code* and to arrange for its publication.

Initial work on preparing and editing the text of the new *Code* was carried out at Wisley by John David, Alan Leslie and myself using the recordings of the discussions as well as notes taken at the meetings by Janet Cubey. A draft was then forwarded to the other members of the Editorial Committee to check and approve before being circulated by e-mail to the full membership of the Commission for further comment and suggested amendments prior to publication.

## *Foreword*

The Commission is indebted to the following individuals who have submitted proposals and suggestions for the revision of this *Code* since the 2004 *Code* was published :-

Björn Aldén (Sweden); S. Bodegom (The Netherlands); Ž. Borzen (Croatia); D. Collins (USA); R. Cross (Australia); J.J. Cubey (UK); D. Donald (UK); K. Donald (UK); M. Dosmann (USA); M. Griffiths (UK); A. Hay (Australia); W.L.A. Hetterscheid (The Netherlands); M.H.A. Hoffmann (The Netherlands); C.D. Holetich (Canada); H. Iketani (Japan); J. Iles (USA); Xiaobai Jin (China); A.C. Leslie (UK); V.A. Matthews (UK); L. Miedema (The Netherlands); Yoko Otsuki (UK); G. Payton (USA); D. Ross (USA); J.M.H. Shaw (UK); R.P. Trehane (UK); R.G. van den Berg (The Netherlands); J. van Scheepen (The Netherlands); R. Spencer (Australia); F. Vrugtman (Canada) and C. Whitehouse (UK).

I would like to express the warmest thanks of the Commission to all these individuals as well as to those who took part in the Wageningen Symposium discussions. The input of all of them has been extremely valuable to the Commission in the preparation of this new *Code*.

It will be noted that since the publication of the 2004 *Code* a number of members have retired from the Commission and I would like to thank them for all their work for ICNCP over the years they have been involved.

Equally I welcome to the Commission the eleven new members who have already contributed greatly to the preparation of this new edition of the *Code* during the revision process from their wide international backgrounds in cultivated plant taxonomy.

The task of the Editorial Committee was also made very much easier by Dr Janet Cubey who acted as Editorial Committee Secretary and coordinated very calmly and efficiently all aspects of the long editorial process. On behalf of all the Commission members I thank her very warmly for her great help in the preparation of this new edition of ICNCP. In addition Patty Boardman and Richard Sanford contributed greatly in the preparation of the *Code*, by assisting with the Appendices and Indices in particular. Again I express my warmest thanks to them for their help.

Finally, my grateful thanks to all the members of the Editorial Committee who have worked so hard to bring this eighth edition of the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* to a successful conclusion.

Proposals to modify this *Code* will, when possible, be published in *Hanburyana* and should be sent to The Chairman, The Editorial Committee, ICNCP, c/o The Royal Horticultural Society's Garden, Wisley, Woking, Surrey, GU23 6QB, UK or by email to [icncp@rhs.org.uk](mailto:icncp@rhs.org.uk).

Chris Brickell, Chairman, IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants and Chairman, Editorial Committee, ICNCP.



*Commission*

**IUBS INTERNATIONAL COMMISSION FOR THE  
NOMENCLATURE OF CULTIVATED PLANTS**

Members, October 2007

**Chairman**

Mr. C.D. Brickell  
The Camber, The Street  
Nutbourne, Pulborough  
West Sussex, RH20 2HE  
United Kingdom

**Secretary**

Dr. W.L.A. Hettterscheid  
Department of Plant Sciences  
Wageningen University  
Generaal Foulkesweg 37  
6703 BL Wageningen  
The Netherlands

Björn Aldén  
Gothenburg botanical garden  
Carl Skottsbergs gata 22A  
SE-41319 Gothenburg, Sweden

Dr. Crinan Alexander  
Royal Botanic Garden Edinburgh  
20A Inverleith Row  
Edinburgh EH3 5LR  
United Kingdom

Dr. B.R. Baum  
Agriculture & Agri-Food Canada  
960 Carling Avenue  
Ottawa, Ontario  
Canada K1A 0C6

Dr. J.C. David  
The Royal Horticultural Society's Garden  
Wisley, Woking  
Surrey, GU23 6QB  
United Kingdom

Ing C. (Kees) van Ettekoven  
Naktuinbouw  
Sotaweg 22  
2371 GD Roelofarendsveen  
The Netherlands

Dr. Hugh F. Glen  
KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium, SANBI  
P O Box 52099, Berea Road, 4007  
South Africa

F. Niall Green  
Science and Advice for Scottish Agriculture  
(SASA)  
Roddinglaw Road  
Edinburgh EH12 9FJ  
United Kingdom

Dr. Hiroyuki Iketani  
National Institute of Fruit Tree Sciences  
NARO  
2-1 Fujimoto  
Tsukuba, 305-8605  
Japan

Dr. A.C. Leslie  
109 York Street  
Cambridge, CB1 2PZ  
United Kingdom

*Commission*

Dr. Valéry Malécot  
UMR GenHort & dept. Sciences Biologiques  
Agrocampus-Ouest Centre d'Angers Institut  
National d'Horticulture et de Paysage  
2 rue le Nôtre  
49045 Angers Cedex 01  
France

Prof. J. McNeill  
(appointed by IAPT by IUBS)  
Royal Botanic Garden Edinburgh  
20A Inverleith Row  
Edinburgh EH3 5LR  
United Kingdom

Prof. Qibai Zhang  
Nanjing Forestry University  
Lonpan Road 159  
Nanjing 210037, Jiangsu  
China

Dr. Roger Spencer  
Royal Botanic Gardens  
South Yarra, Victoria 3141  
Australia

Freek Vrugtman  
Royal Botanical Gardens  
PO Box 399  
Hamilton, Ontario  
L8N 3H8  
Canada

Dr. John H. Wiersema  
U.S. Department of Agriculture/Agricultural  
Research Service  
National Germplasm Resources Laboratory  
Bldg. 003, Beltsville Agricultural Research  
Center  
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2350  
United States of America

Dr. Xiaobai Jin  
Institute of Botany  
Chinese Academy of Sciences  
20 Nanxincun, Xiangshan  
Beijing 100093  
China

## **PREFACE**

The eighth edition of this *Code* maintains the overall format and style of the seventh (2004) edition and, while the general order of Articles remains the same, the numbering has been altered to take into account the addition or removal of some provisions. A comparative key listing the differences in numbering of the Rules, Notes, Recommendations and Divisions between the 2004 edition and the current edition is provided on page 14/xiv.

A comparative list of new provisions appearing in Divisions II-VI is also provided to indicate differences between the 2004 *Code* and this edition.

The language in the *Code* has been further simplified to make it more understandable for non-taxonomists. An important change, however, is the reinstatement of “taxon” to replace the phrase “distinguishable groups of plants” throughout the text which the Commission considered more appropriate and precise in a code dealing with nomenclatural practice.

For the purposes of this Code the verb “write” is to be construed as covering all methods of presenting a name, whether printed, hand-written or electronic.

For the purposes of this Code also the word “genus” should be taken to include nothogenus and the generic name of an intergeneric graft-chimaera.

While this *Code* is written in English, the Commission hopes that translations will be made available in other languages and scripts so that it may be more widely used in the naming of cultivated plants throughout the world. Particular attention has been paid to differing linguistic customs, taking into account where possible the formation and use of words and terms in different parts of the world.

A further change to the *Code* is the recognition of grex as a third category in addition to cultivar and Group although it will continue to apply only to orchids. As a consequence it will now be possible to recognise character-based Groups within a parent-based grex.

In addition to updating the list of important dates in the *Code* a list of previous editions of ICNCP and their dates of publication has been provided.

The Preamble outlines the justification for the publication of this *Code* and describes the way in which the various provisions operate. It will be noted that the Rules and

Recommendations of this *Code* are also intended to apply to all organisms traditionally treated as plants including algae and fungi.

The Principles remain largely the same as in the 2004 edition of the *Code* but have been amended to include the category “grex” where appropriate. The second paragraph of Principle 4 of the 2004 *Code* has been transferred to Principle 6 which specifies naming processes not regulated by ICNCP.

Although the use and formation of trade designations are not directly the concern of this *Code* it has been recognised that advice is required on how these should be handled and this is provided in Article 10 and Appendix 10 which is one of several new Appendices provided to assist users of the *Code*. In certain circumstances, however, a cultivar epithet may also be in use for the same cultivar as a trade designation.

The following changes and amendments relating to the naming, formation and application of the Rules and Recommendations for the categories cultivar, Group and grex that have been introduced in this edition of the *Code* are set out below:-

Article 29 (Article 26 in the 2004 *Code*) covering the choice of names has been extended to include cultivars, Groups and grexes.

Article 27 (Article 24 in the 2004 *Code*). It is now acceptable for the full name of only one parent of a grex to be known provided that at least the generic or nothogeneric name of the other parent is known and stated at the time of publication.

Where it follows established practice and is not considered to cause confusion a Group epithet may include the common name of the genus to which the Group belongs.

Where it follows linguistic custom a cultivar epithet may include the common name of the genus to which the cultivar belongs. This does not apply to Japanese epithets.

No cultivar can be deemed to exist formally until its name has been established in accordance with the rules of this *Code*.

In forming a new cultivar epithet the use of Latin words will be permissible provided that the whole epithet is not comprised of Latin words.

The use of full stops in acronyms becomes a recommendation, not a requirement.

## *Preface*

The use of two exclamation marks in a cultivar will be permitted provided they are not adjacent to one another.

The rules preventing a cultivar epithet duplicating the final epithet in Latin form of the botanical taxon to which it belongs now becomes a recommendation.

Names of cultivars, Groups and grexes published in an electronic catalogue will not be established unless two copies of the catalogue have been printed off and deposited with a designated library. The publisher of the catalogue will be encouraged to undertake this distribution, but anyone may do so, provided that, where possible, they have the permission of the publisher. It is further recommended that single printed and dated copies of the catalogue are distributed to a minimum of five libraries.

**Transcription and Transliteration:** The current rules on transcription and transliteration become recommendations as it is recognised that there are problems in the use of the individual systems that are currently prescribed in the 2004 *Code*.

**Nomenclatural standards:** It is recommended that copyright permission is obtained where possible for any image that is submitted as a nomenclatural standard.

**New Appendices:** The following new Appendices have been prepared and included in the *Code* for reference purposes in addition to the three Appendices in the 2004 *Code* which have been updated :-

Places Maintaining Nomenclatural Standards.

Libraries Holding Significant Collections of Nursery Catalogues.

Lists of Conserved and Rejected Epithets.

Latin Names of Plants.

The Nomenclatural Filter (revised and expanded from the 1995 *Code*).

Quick Guide for New Cultivar Names.

Trade Designations.

Flow Chart of Nomenclatural Bodies and Processes.

As has been emphasised in previous editions of the ICNCP, codes of nomenclature should remain bastions of stability for naming plants and should not be changed frequently or unnecessarily. They do, however, need to be updated in line with developing trends and practices that occur in the disciplines they serve.

It is hoped that this edition of ICNCP will prove to be sufficiently robust to remain as a standard guide for all users of cultivated plants for some years to come. Feedback on both its ease of application and any deficiencies from users will be greatly appreciated by all members of the Commission.

C.D. Brickell, on behalf of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants  
April, 2009

## COMPARISON BETWEEN THE 2004 *CODE* AND THIS EDITION

This key demonstrates how the various numbered Rules, Notes, Recommendations, and Divisions of the 2004 edition of this *Code* may be compared with the provisions of this edition. This does not necessarily indicate that the meanings or implications of the previous provisions remain unchanged.

<b>2004</b>	<b>2009</b>	3.4	3.4	13.2	14.2
Div II	Div II	3.5	3.5	13.3	14.3
1.1	1.1	3.6	4.3	14.1	15.1
1.2	1.3	3.7	4.4	14.2	15.2
1A.1	1A.1	4.1	5.1	14.3	deleted
2.1	2.1	5.1	6.1	14.4	15.3
2.2	2.3	5.2	6.2	14.5	16.2
2.Nt.1	2.Nt.1	5.Nt.1	6.Nt.1	14.6	16.3
2.Nt.2	2.Nt.2	5.3	6.3	15.1	17.1
2.Nt.3	2.Nt.3	5.4	6.4	15A.1	17.3
2.3	2.2	5.5	6.5	16.1	18.1
2.Nt.4	2.Nt.4	6.1	7.1	16.2	18.2
2.4	2.4	7.1	8.1	17.1	19.1
2.5	2.5	7.Nt.1	8.Nt.1	17.2	19.2
2.6	2.6	7.2	8.3	17.3	19.3
2.7	2.7	7.3	8.4	18.1	20.1
2.8	2.8	7A.1	8A.1	18.2	20.2
2.9	2.10	8.1	9.1	19.1	21.1
2.10	2.11	8.2	9.2	19.2	21.2
2.11	2.12	9.1	10.1	19.3	21.3
2.12	2.14	9.Nt.1	10.Nt.1	19.4	21.21
2.13	2.15	10.1	11.1	19.5	21.4
2.14	2.16	10.2	11.4	19.6	21.5
2.15	2.13	10.3	11.5	19.7	21.6
2.16	2.19	10.4	11.6	19.Nt.1	21.Nt.2
2.Nt.5	2.Nt.5	10.5	11.7	19.8	21B.1
2.17	2.20	10.6	11.8	19.9	21.7
2.18	2.21	11.1	12.1	19.10	21.8
2.19	2.22	12.1	13.1	19.11	21.9
2.20	2.23	12.2	13.2	19.12	21.10
3.1	3.1	12.3	17.2	19.13	21.11
3.2	3.3	12A.1	deleted	19.14	21.12
3.Nt.1	3.Nt.1	13.1	14.1	19.15	21.13
3.Nt.2	3.Nt.2	13.Nt.1	14.Nt.1	19.16	21.15
3.3	deleted	13.Nt.2	14.Nt.2	19.17	21.14

19.18	21B.1	24.3	27.3	31.1	34B.1
19.19	21.16	24.4	27.5	31.2	34C.1
19.20	21.17	24.Nt.1	27.Nt.1	31.3	34D.1
19.21	21.18	24.5	27.6	31.4	34D.2
19.22	21.19	24.Nt.2	27.Nt.2	32.1	35.1
19.23	21.20	24.6	27.7	32.2	35.2
19.24	21.22	24.7	27.8	32.3	35.3
19.25	21.23	24A.1	27A.1	32.4	35.4
19.26	21.24	24B.1	27B.1	32.5	35.5
19.27	21.25	24C.1	27C.1	32.6	35.6
19.Nt.2	21.Nt.3	24D.1	27D.1	32.7	35.7
19A.1	21D.1	24E.1	27F.1	32.8	35.8
19B.1	21E.1	24F.1	27G.1	32.9	35.9
19C.1	21F.1	24G.1	27H.1	32.10	35.10
19D.1	21G.1	25.1	28.1	32.11	35B.1
19E.1	21H.1	25.2	28.2	32.12	35.11
19F.1	21I.1	25.3	28.3	32.13	35.12
19G.1	21J.1	25.4	28.4	32.14	35.13
19H.1	21K.1	25.5	28.5	32.15	35.14
20.1	22.1	25A.1	28A.1	32A.1	35A.1
20.2	22.2	26.1	29.1	Div III	Div III
20.3	22.3	26.2	29.2	Div III, 1	Div III, 1
20.4	22.4	26.3	29.3	Div III, 2	Div III, 2
20.5	22.6	26.4	29.4	Div III, 3	Div III, 3
20A.1	22A.1	26A.1	29A.1	Div III, 4	Div III, 4
21.1	24.1	27.1	30.1	Div III, 5	Div III, 5
21.2	24.2	27.Nt.1	30.Nt.1	Div III, 6	Div III, 6
21.3	24.3	27.2	30.2	Div III, 7	Div III, 7
21.4	24.4	27.3	30.3	Div III, 8	Div III, 8
21.5	24.5	27.4	30.4	Div III, 9	Div III, 9
21.6	24.6	27.5	30.5	Div III, 10	Div III, 10
22.1	25.1	28.1	31.1	Div III, 11	Div III, 11
22.Nt.1	25.Nt.1	28.2	31.2	Div III, 12	Div III, 12
22.Nt.2	25.Nt.2	28.3	31.3	Div III, 13	Div III, 13
22.2	25.2	28.4	31.4	Div III, 14	Div III, 14
22.3	25.3	28.5	31.5	Div IV	Div IV
22A.1	25A.1	29.1	32.1	Div IV, 1	Div IV, 1
22B.1	25B.1	29.Nt.1	32.Nt.1	Div IV, 2	Div IV, 2
23.1	26.1	29.2	32.2	Div IV, 3	Div IV, 3
23.2	26.2	29.Nt.2	32.Nt.2	Div IV, 4	Div IV, 5
23.3	26.3	29.3	deleted	Div IV, 5	Div IV, 6
23.4	26.4	30.1	33.1	Div IV, 6	Div IV, 7
24.1	27.1	30.2	33A.1	Div IV, 7	Div IV, 8
24.2	27.2	30.Nt.1	33.Nt.2	Div V	Div V



*Codes, comparison*

Div V, 1	Div V, 2
Div V, Nt.1	Div V, Nt.1
Div V, Nt.2	Div V, Nt.2
Div V, 2	Div V, 2
Div V, 3	Div V, 3
Div V, 4	Div V, 4
Div V, 5	Div V, 5
Div V, 6	Div V, 6
Div V, Nt.3	Div V, Nt.8
Div V, 7	Div V, 7
Div V, 8	Div V, 8
Div V, 9	Div V, 9
Div V, 10	Div V, 10
Div V, Nt.4	Div V, Nt.9
Div V, 11	Div V, 11
Div V, 12	Div V, 12
Div V, 13	Div V, 13
Div V, 14	Div V, 14
Div VI	Div VI

## **NEW PROVISIONS**

The following are novel provisions appearing in Division II-VI of this edition. Those marked with an asterisk are largely related to orchid grex nomenclature.

### **ART**

1.2	23.5*
2.9	23.Nt.1
2.17	23.Nt.2
2.18	23.Nt.3
3.2	23A.1*
4.1*	25B.2
4.2*	25B.3
4.Nt.1*	26.Nt.1
4.Nt.2*	26A.1
8.Nt.2	27.4*
8.2*	27D.2
8.Nt.3	27E.1
9.Nt.1	27F.2
11.2	28.6
11.Nt.1	31.6
11.3	31.7
13.Nt.1	31.8
16.1*	31.Nt.1
16.4*	33.Nt.1
17.Nt.1	33.Nt.3
18.3	34.1
21.Nt.1	34.Nt.1
21A.1	34A.1
21C.1	Div IV, 4
22.Nt.1	Div V, Nt.3
22.5	Div V, Nt.4
23.1*	Div V, Nt.5
23.2*	Div V, Nt.6
23.3*	Div V, Nt.7
23.4*	

*Important dates*

**IMPORTANT DATES IN THIS *CODE***

Dates upon which particular provision of this *Code* become effective.

The Rules in this *Code* are retroactive, except in the following specified cases. The date on the left is that upon which each Rule becomes effective.

1 May 1753	Art. 18.1 Art. 18.3
2 January 1858	Art. 18.2
1 January 1900	Art. 25.2
1 January 1953	Art. 25.3 Div III, 13
1 January 1959	Art. 21.6 Art. 21.7 Art. 21.11 Art. 21.16 Art. 21.22 Art. 21.24 Art. 26.1 Art. 27.1
1 January 1973	Art. 25.3 Div III, 13
1 January 1996	Art. 21.13 Art. 21.17 Art. 21.18 Art. 21.20 Art. 21.23
1 January 2004	Art. 21.15 Art. 22.6 Div V, 5
1 January 2010	Div V, 6 Art. 23.5

**PREVIOUS EDITIONS OF THIS CODE**

1 <sup>st</sup>	Published by the RHS as a booklet: 29 pp Stearn, W.T.	1953
2 <sup>nd</sup>	<i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>10</b> : 28 pp Fletcher, H.R., Gilmour, J.S.L., Lawrence, G.H.M., Little, Jr, E.L., Nilsson-Leissner, G. & de Vilmorin, R.	1958
3 <sup>rd</sup>	<i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>22</b> : 30 pp Fletcher, H.R., Gilmour, J.S.L., Lawrence, G.H.M., Matthews, J.D., Nilsson-Leissner, G. & de Vilmorin, R.	1961
4 <sup>th</sup>	<i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>64</b> : 32 pp Gilmour, J.S.L., Horne, F.R., Little Jr, E.L., Stafleu, F.A. & Richens, R.H.	1969
5 <sup>th</sup>	<i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>104</b> : 32 pp Brickell, C.D., Voss, E.G., Kelley, A.F., Schneider, F. & Richens, R.H.	1980
6 <sup>th</sup>	<i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>133</b> : 175 pp Trehane, P., Brickell, C.D., Baum, B.R., Hetterscheid, W.L.A., Leslie, A.C., McNeill, J., Spongberg, S.A. & Vrugtman, F.	1995
7 <sup>th</sup>	<i>Acta Horticulturae</i> <b>647</b> : 123 pp <i>Regnum Vegetabile</i> <b>144</b> Brickell, C.D., Baum, B.R., Hetterscheid, W.L.A., Leslie, A.C., McNeill, J., Trehane, P., Vrugtman, F. & Wiersema, J.H.	2004



## INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS

### PREAMBLE

1. The disciplines of agriculture, forestry, and horticulture require a precise, stable, and simple system of naming plants that can be applied internationally. This system must deal with both the terms that denote the various categories of taxonomically distinguishable groups of plants (taxa, plural; taxon, singular) in cultivation and the formation of names for such groups.

The purpose of giving a name to a taxon is not to indicate its characters or history, but to supply a means of referring to it and to indicate to which category it is assigned.

This *Code* aims at the provision of a stable method of naming taxa of cultivated plants<sup>1</sup>, avoiding and rejecting the use of names that may cause error or ambiguity.

Next in importance is the maintenance of prevailing custom and the avoidance of the unnecessary creation of names. Other considerations, such as absolute grammatical correctness, regularity or euphony of epithets, regard for persons etc., notwithstanding their undeniable importance, are of less significance.

2. The Principles form the basis of the system in this *Code* for naming plants in cultivation.

3. The detailed provisions are divided into Rules, set out in the Articles, and Recommendations. Notes are provided to give ancillary information and examples are added to the Rules and Recommendations to illustrate them.

4. The object of the Rules is to put names from the past in order and to provide for those of the future.

5. The Recommendations deal with subsidiary points, their object being to bring about greater uniformity and clarity, especially in future naming. Names contrary to a Recommendation may not, on that account, be rejected but, whenever possible, Recommendations should be followed.

6. The provisions regulating modification of this *Code* form its last Division.

7. The Rules and Recommendations apply to all organisms traditionally treated

---

<sup>1</sup> These are deliberately selected plants that may have arisen by intentional or accidental hybridization in cultivation, by selection from existing cultivated stocks, or from variants within wild populations that are maintained as recognizable entities solely by continued propagation. Plants of this type are sometimes referred to as cultigens.

as plants (including algae and fungi) and whose origin or selection is primarily due to intentional human activity.

8. The *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature*<sup>1</sup> provides for names in Latin form for taxa of all organisms traditionally treated as plants whose naming is not governed by this *Code*.

9. The only proper reasons for changing a name of a taxon are either a more profound knowledge of the facts resulting from adequate taxonomic study or the necessity of giving up a name that is contrary to the Rules of a *Code*.

10. In the absence of a relevant Rule or where the consequences of Rules are doubtful, established custom is followed.

11. Translations of this *Code* are encouraged. In the event of any discrepancy, the original English version is considered correct.

12. This edition of the *Code* supersedes all previous editions.

---

<sup>1</sup>Current edition: McNeill, J., Barrie, F. R., Burdet, H. M., Demoulin, V., Hawksworth, D. L., Marhold, K., Nicolson, D. H., Prado, J., Silva, P. C., Skog, J. E., Wiersema, J. H., & Turland, N. J. (eds.) 2006. *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (Vienna Code) adopted by the Seventeenth International Botanical Congress Vienna, Austria, July 2005*. A. R. G. Gantner Verlag, Ruggell, Liechtenstein. [Regnum Veg. 146] (electronic version: <http://ibot.sav.sk/icbn/main.htm>).

## DIVISION I: PRINCIPLES

### PRINCIPLE 1

A precise, stable, and internationally recognized system for naming plants in cultivation is essential for international understanding and communication. The aim of this *Code*, the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants (ICNCP)*, also known as the Cultivated Plant Code, is to promote uniformity, accuracy, and stability in the naming of agricultural, forestry, and horticultural plants.

### PRINCIPLE 2

The *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (ICBN or Botanical Code)* governs the names in Latin form for plants, except for the generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras, which are entirely governed by this *Code*.

Taxa of plants whose origin or selection is primarily due to intentional human activity may be given names formed according to the provisions of this *Code*. With the exception of any Latin component within their names, the form of which is governed by the *ICBN*, the nomenclature of names in the categories of cultivar, Group, and grex is governed by this *Code* alone.

### PRINCIPLE 3

The naming of taxa governed by this *Code* is based upon priority of publication. Each cultivar or Group with a particular circumscription and each grex with a particular parentage may bear only one accepted name: the earliest that is in accordance with the Rules, except as provided for within this *Code*.

### PRINCIPLE 4

Names of plants governed by this *Code* must be universally and freely available for use by any person to denote a taxon.

### PRINCIPLE 5

This *Code* regulates the terminology to be used for categories of taxa governed by this *Code* and the names to be applied to those individual taxa.

Under some national and international legislation such as that providing for National Listing or Plant Breeders' Rights (Plant Variety Rights), names may be established for taxa of plants using terminology peculiar to such legislation. This *Code* does not regulate the use of such terminology or the formation of such names but recognizes that, under such legislation, these names take precedence over names formed under the provisions of this *Code*.



#### **PRINCIPLE 6**

The practice of applying trade designations as marketing devices in addition to properly established names of taxa of plants is not supported by this *Code*; such designations are not to be recognized as being names regulated under this *Code*.

Plants are sometimes marketed using trademarks. Such trademarks are the intellectual property of a person or corporate body and are not therefore freely available for any person to use; consequently, they cannot be considered as names regulated under this *Code*.

#### **PRINCIPLE 7**

The formation and use of common names of plants are not regulated by this *Code*.

#### **PRINCIPLE 8**

International registration of cultivar, Group, and grex names and the publication and promotion of lists of such names are of the greatest importance for promoting uniformity, accuracy, and stability in the naming of cultivated plants.

#### **PRINCIPLE 9**

The selection, preservation, and publication of designations of nomenclatural standards is important in stabilizing the application of cultivar and Group names. Particular names are attached to nomenclatural standards to make clear the precise application of the names and to help avoid duplication of such names. Although not a requirement for the establishment of a name, the designation of such standards is strongly encouraged.

#### **PRINCIPLE 10**

This *Code* has no force beyond that deriving from the free assent of those concerned with the naming of cultivated plants. However, the Rules and Recommendations of this *Code* should be endorsed and applied by all those responsible for the formation and use of names for cultivated plants.

#### **PRINCIPLE 11**

The provisions of this *Code* are retroactive unless stated otherwise.

## DIVISION II: RULES AND RECOMMENDATIONS

### CHAPTER I: GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### ARTICLE 1: RELATIONSHIP WITH THE *INTERNATIONAL CODE OF BOTANICAL NOMENCLATURE (ICBN)*

1.1. Plants in cultivation may be named in accordance with the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (ICBN)* at least to the level of genus, or to the level of species or below.

1.2. Plants in cultivation meeting the criteria of being recognized as cultivars, Groups, or grexes may be given epithets in accordance with this *Code* and assigned to a named taxon under the *ICBN* (see also Art. 21.2, Art. 22.1, and Art. 23.1).

1.3. Hybrids between taxa, including, if it is so wished, those arising in cultivation, may receive names as provided in Appendix I of the *ICBN* ("Names of hybrids"; see also Division III of this *Code*). Alternatively, or in addition, cultivated plants arising through hybridization may be named as cultivars, Groups, or grexes under the provisions of this *Code*.

Ex. 1. *Solanum* × *procurrens* is the name, under the *ICBN*, for the hybrid between the European *S. nigrum* and the South American *S. physalifolium* that occurred on cultivated ground in the United Kingdom.

Ex. 2. *Hypericum* × *inodorum* is the name, under the *ICBN*, for hybrids between *H. androsaemum* and *H. hircinum* that occur where the two species meet both in the wild and in cultivation. Cultivars and Groups may be assigned to this hybrid name if desired.

Ex. 3. *Lycaste* × *smeeana* (*L. deppei* × *L. skinneri*) is a naturally occurring hybrid; *Calanthe* × *dominyi* (*C. masuca* × *C. triplicata*) is a hybrid that arose in cultivation.

Ex. 4. The progeny of the repeated cross between *Victoria amazonica* and *V. cruziana* with *V. amazonica* as the pollen parent fit the criteria of cultivar (Art. 2.3) and have received the name *V.* 'Longwood Hybrid'; likewise the progeny of the cross with *V. cruziana* as the pollen parent and which are consistently distinct from progeny of the former cross have been named *V.* 'Adventure' (see *Pond & Garden* 1(4): 20-23. 1999). These hybrids have not been named under the provisions of the *ICBN*.

#### Recommendation 1A

1A.1. Plants in cultivation that meet the criteria of being recognized as cultivars, Groups, or grexes should be named in accordance with the provisions of this *Code*, not under the provisions of the *ICBN*.

## CHAPTER II: DEFINITIONS

### ARTICLE 2: THE CULTIVAR

2.1. The basic category of cultivated plants whose nomenclature is governed by this *Code* is the cultivar. The Rules for forming names in this category are laid out in Art. 21 of this *Code*.

*Note 1.* The botanical categories *varietas* (var.) and *forma* (f.) are not equivalent to cultivar and these terms must not be automatically treated as equivalent terms for “cultivar”.

2.2. The English words “variety”, “form”, and “strain” or their equivalents in other languages must not be used for the word “cultivar” when fulfilling the Articles of this *Code* nor in translations of this *Code*.

*Note 2.* The words “variety” in English, “variété” in French, “variedad” in Spanish, “variedade” in Portuguese, “varietà” in Italian, “ras” in Dutch, “Sorte” in German, “sort” in Scandinavian languages and Russian, “pinzhong” in Chinese, “engei-hinshu” in Japanese, and corresponding terms in other languages, have been used as common equivalents to the word cultivar.

*Note 3.* The words “form” (in the sense of cultivated or garden form) in English, “Form” in German, “forme” in French, “forma” in Spanish, etc., are sometimes used as common equivalents to the word “cultivar”.

*Note 4.* Notwithstanding Art. 2.2, in certain national and international legislation or other legal conventions the word “variety” or its equivalent in other languages is a statutory or otherwise legal term used to denominate a proven variant that is distinct, uniform, and stable and is exactly equivalent to the word “cultivar” as defined in this *Code*.

2.3. A cultivar is an assemblage of plants that (a) has been selected for a particular character or combination of characters, (b) is distinct, uniform, and stable in these characters, and (c) when propagated by appropriate means, retains those characters (but see Art. 9.1 *Note 1*).

2.4. Cultivars differ in their mode of origin and reproduction, for example as described in Art. 2.5-2.19. Whatever the means of propagation, only those plants which maintain the characters that define a particular cultivar may be included within that cultivar.

2.5. Plants of the same clone (which are asexually propagated from any part of a plant) may form a cultivar.

*Ex. 1.* *Asparagus officinalis* ‘Calet’, *Fraxinus pennsylvanica* ‘Newport’, *Gerbera* ‘Delphi’, *Salix alba* ‘Lieveelde’, *Salix matsudana* ‘Tortuosa’, *Solanum tuberosum* ‘Wilja’, *Syringa vulgaris* ‘Andenken an Ludwig Späth’, and *Tulipa* ‘Apeldoorn’ are clonal cultivars.

2.6. Plants of a topophysic clone (which are asexually derived from particular parts of a plant) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 2. *Abies amabilis* ‘Spreading Star’ and *Abies koreana* ‘Prostrate Beauty’ were derived from lateral branching growth of the parent plants.

2.7. Plants of a cyclophysic clone (which are asexually derived from a particular phase of a plant's growth cycle) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 3. *Ficus binnendijkii* cultivars ‘Amstel King’, ‘Amstel Queen’, and ‘Alii’ all represent juvenile forms of the species with lanceolate leaves, whereas the adult form has elliptic leaves; *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* ‘Ellwoodii’ was derived from juvenile cutting material; *Hedera helix* ‘Arborescens’ was derived from adult cutting material.

2.8. Plants of a clone which are derived from aberrant growth may form a cultivar.

Ex. 4. *Picea abies* ‘Little Gem’ is a dwarf plant derived from propagation of a witches' broom found on *P. abies* ‘Nidiformis’, itself a witches' broom found on a plant of *P. abies*.

2.9. Plants the characters of which are wholly or partly derived from the presence of an intracellular organism may form a cultivar.

Ex. 5. *Syringa* ‘Charisma’ is a cultivar derived from propagation of a witches' broom on *Syringa* ‘Royalty’ caused by a phytoplasma. The characters used to distinguish *Iris unguicularis* ‘Kilndown’ are caused by the presence of a stable potyvirus.

2.10. Plants of the same chimaera (which have one or more mutant tissues in intimate association with normal tissue) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 6. *Acer platanoides* ‘Drummondii’, *Daphne* × *burkwoodii* ‘Carol Mackie’, *Filipendula ulmaria* ‘Variegata’, *Ilex myrtifolia* ‘Aurea’, *Juniperus chinensis* ‘Plumosa Aureovariegata’, *Pelargonium* ‘Freak of Nature’, potato ‘Red Craigs Royal’, *Salvia officinalis* ‘Tricolor’, *Spiraea japonica* ‘Anthony Waterer’, and *Vinca major* ‘Variegata’ are chimaeras whose characteristics are effected by a proportion of mutant tissue.

2.11. Plants of the same graft-chimaera (which are composed of vegetative tissues from two or more different taxa in intimate association and which originate by grafting) may form a cultivar (see also Art. 5.1).

Ex. 7. + *Crataegomespilus* ‘Dardarii’ combines the tissues of *Crataegus monogyna* and *Mespilus germanica*; *Syringa* ‘Correlata’ combines the tissues of *S. × chinensis* and *S. vulgaris*.

2.12. An assemblage of individual plants grown from seed derived from uncontrolled pollination may form a cultivar when it meets the criteria laid down in Art. 2.3 and when it can be distinguished consistently by one or more characters even though the individual plants of the assemblage may not necessarily be genetically uniform.

Ex. 8. *Ballota nigra* ‘Archer's Variety’, *Delphinium* ‘Astolat’, *Geum* ‘Lady Stratheden’, *Lavatera* ‘Ice Cool’, *Milium effusum* ‘Aureum’, *Verbena hastata* ‘Rosea’, and *Viola* ‘Penny Black’ are cultivars which are propagated from seed.

Ex. 9. When seed is sown of the yellow-fruited cultivar *Viburnum opulus* 'Xanthocarpum', a proportion of the resulting seedlings is indistinguishable from the parent plant; such progeny is to be treated as being part of the same cultivar.

Ex. 10. The seed-raised *Betula pendula* 'Penla', *Hippophae rhamnoides* 'Ram', *Larix kaempferi* 'Palsgård Velling', and *Rosa carolina* 'Indabes' were selected from plants from known geographical sources.

2.13. An assemblage of plants grown from seed collected from a particular provenance on more than one occasion and clearly distinguishable by one or more characters (a topovariant) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 11. If considered distinguishable, plants such as *Picea abies* of Dutch provenance Gortel-1, *Syringa vulgaris* of a white-flowered Swedish seed source called Veberöd, or *Eucalyptus camaldulensis* selected from especially fast-growing populations, could be treated as cultivars.

2.14. Plants of a line (which results from repeated self-fertilization or inbreeding) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 12. *Beta vulgaris* 'SP6 926-0', *Helianthus annuus* 'HA306', *Lactuca sativa* 'Kagraner Sommer', *Phaseolus vulgaris* 'Contender', *Triticum aestivum* 'Marquis', and *Zea mays* 'Wisconsin 153' are all lines.

2.15. Plants of a multiline (which is made up from several closely related lines) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 13. *Agropyron intermedium* 'Clarke', *Asparagus officinalis* 'Lucullus', *Glycine max* 'Jupiter-R', *Lotus corniculatus* 'Cree', *Macroptilium atropurpureum* 'Aztec', and *Trifolium repens* 'Star' are all multilines.

2.16. Plants of the same F<sub>1</sub> hybrid (the result of a deliberate repeatable single cross between two pure-bred lines) may form a cultivar.

Ex. 14. *Brassica oleracea* 'King Arthur', *Capsicum annuum* 'Delight', and *Sorghum bicolor* 'Texas 610' are all F<sub>1</sub> hybrids.

2.17. Plants that have arisen as the result of a change in ploidy level may form a cultivar.

Ex. 15. *Lilium* 'Tetra Brandywine' is a tetraploid (2n=48) clone derived from the diploid *L.* 'Brandywine' (2n=24), with larger flowers, thicker tepals and sturdier stems.

2.18. Agamospermous plants, including those F<sub>1</sub> hybrids that retain their genetic composition and characteristics through the second generation and beyond as a result of agamospermous reproduction, may form cultivars.

Ex. 16. *Cenchrus ciliaris* 'Higgins', *Eragrostis curvula* 'Catalina', *Poa pratensis* 'Baron' and *Hypericum perforatum* 'Topaz' are agamospermous cultivars; the agamospermous hybrids resulting from crossing plants of *Tripsacum dactyloides* that carry an agamospermous trait with plants of *Zea mays* may be given a cultivar name.

2.19. An assemblage of genetically modified plants that demonstrates new

characters following the deliberate implantation of genetic material from a different germplasm may form a cultivar.

*Note 5.* In practice, such an assemblage is often marketed from one or more lines or multilines that have been genetically modified. These lines or multilines often remain in a constant state of development which makes the naming of such an assemblage as a cultivar a futile exercise. Generally, these assemblages are marketed under trademarks.

2.20. In considering whether two or more plants belong to the same or different cultivars, their origins are irrelevant. Cultivars that cannot be distinguished from others by any of the means currently adopted for cultivar determination in the group concerned are treated as one cultivar.

*Ex. 17.* Some cultivars derived from branch sports of *Pittosporum* 'Garnettii' are indistinguishable and therefore belong to a single cultivar, even though these sports have occurred at different times in different locations. *Pittosporum* 'Margaret Turnbull', which originated in New Zealand, appears to be identical with *P.* 'John Flanagan' from Ireland. The International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Pittosporum* designated *P.* 'Margaret Turnbull' as the accepted name, with *P.* 'John Flanagan' as a later synonym.

*Ex. 18.* *Dianthus* 'William Sim' produces distinguishable mutants that by further mutation give rise to a range of variants, some of which are indistinguishable from *D.* 'William Sim'.

2.21. If a change in the method of propagation of a cultivar leads to a change in the set of characters by which it is distinguished, the plants so produced are not regarded as belonging to the same cultivar.

*Ex. 19.* The double-flowered *Campanula trachelium* 'Bernice' is usually vegetatively propagated. If grown from seed, it may produce a wide range of plants varying in height, degree of doubling, and colour. Such seed-raised plants are not to be considered the same as, nor be named as, *Campanula trachelium* 'Bernice' unless the individual plants cannot be distinguished from this cultivar.

*Ex. 20.* *Cereus hildmannianus* 'Monstrosus' is a teratological form of a cactus that is generally increased from cuttings. However, on sowing seed, a proportion of seedlings show the same monstrose condition. Whichever way propagation is carried out, the same name is to be applied to the monstrose plants that form the cultivar. The non-monstrose plants are treated as indistinguishable parts of the species.

*Ex. 21.* *Hosta* 'Halcyon' is vegetatively propagated, yet when increased by micropropagation a number of mutants may be generated; one of these has been isolated and multiplied to form the cultivar *H.* 'June'.

2.22. If a rootstock is a cultivar, it is to be named accordingly. Plants produced as the result of grafting a scion onto a rootstock, or interstem, take the name of the scion.

*Ex. 22.* *Malus domestica* 'James Grieve' grafted onto the rootstock known as *M. domestica* 'M9' retains the epithet 'James Grieve', despite the dwarfing effect induced by this particular rootstock.

*Ex. 23.* *Pyrus communis* 'Merton Pride' grafted onto the quince rootstock *Cydonia oblonga* 'Malling C' retains the name *Pyrus communis* 'Merton Pride', despite the semi-dwarfing effect induced by this

rootstock of a different genus.

*Ex. 24.* When a cultivar of *Corylus avellana* (European hazel) is grafted onto a stock of *C. colurna* (Turkish hazel), the resulting plant is regarded as being that cultivar of *C. avellana*.

2.23. Plants whose characteristics are maintained solely by regular practices of cultivation (covariants) are not to be considered as distinct cultivars.

*Ex. 25.* Apples trained as espaliers retain the same names as those which are tree-grown; topiary specimens of *Buxus sempervirens*, including its cultivars, may not receive new cultivar names; bonsai plants retain the names of the plants from which they were derived.

### ARTICLE 3: THE GROUP

3.1. The formal category which may comprise cultivars, individual plants or combinations thereof on the basis of defined character-based similarity is the Group. The Rules for forming Group names are laid out in Art. 22 of this *Code*.

3.2. Criteria for forming and maintaining a Group vary according to the required purposes of particular users. All members of a Group must share the character(s) by which that Group is defined.

*Ex. 1.* In *Primula*, the cultivars ‘MacWatt’s Blue’, ‘Old Irish Scented’, and ‘Osborne Green’ are best cultivated under similar outdoor conditions and have been assembled under *Primula* Border Auricula Group (see B. Hyatt, *Auriculas* 86. 1989).

*Ex. 2.* *Iris* Dutch Group has been designated to include the complex of early flowering cultivars arising mainly from *I. tingitana*, *I. xiphium* var. *lusitanica*, and *I. xiphium* var. *praecox* (see *International checklist for hyacinths and miscellaneous bulbs* 301. 1991).

*Ex. 3.* The cultivars of *Festuca rubra* have been allocated to three Groups, Hexaploid Non-creeping Group, Hexaploid Creeping Group, and Octoploid Creeping Group, each with a distinct set of characters (see R. Duyvendak *et al.*, *Rasen Turf Gazon* 3: 53-62. 1981).

3.3. A taxon at or below the rank of species that is no longer recognized as having taxonomic value in botany yet which continues to have utility in agricultural, horticultural or silvicultural classification may be designated as a Group.

*Ex. 4.* *Rhododendron boothii* Mishmiense Group is based on *R. mishmiense*, a species now generally placed in the synonymy of *R. boothii* but which nonetheless represents a recognizable component of the variation within *R. boothii* that continues to have horticultural value (see The Royal Horticultural Society, *An alphabetical checklist of rhododendron species* 1981).

*Ex. 5.* If *Hosta fortunei* is no longer recognized as a species, the epithet “fortunei” may be used to form *H. Fortunei* Group, if it is thought that individual cultivars and plants previously assigned to that species continue to need to be so assembled.

*Ex. 6.* If *Brassica oleracea* var. *sabauda* (published by Linnaeus in 1753) is no longer recognized as an infraspecific taxon at the rank of *varietas* (var.) within the species, it may be referred to as *Brassica oleracea* Sabauda Group.

*Note 1.* Authors may have used other designations such as “sort”, “type”, “selections”, or “hybrids” as terms equivalent to the word “Group”; such terms are to be replaced by the word “Group”.

*Ex. 7.* *Brachyglottis* Dunedin Hybrids was described (under *Senecio*) by D. L. Clarke (Bean, *Trees and shrubs hardy in the British Isles*, ed. 8, 4: 350. 1980) to cover a miscellany of similar plants derived from hybridization of a number of species of doubtful taxonomic status. If the progeny is recognized as forming a Group, the name is to be written as *Brachyglottis* Dunedin Group.

*Ex. 8.* *Lilium* Darkest Red Selections (originating pre 1996), when recognized as a Group, becomes *Lilium* Darkest Red Group.

*Note 2.* In the traditional ornamental horticulture of Japan, distinctive classes based on habit, leaf, flower, or fruit characteristics have been called *gei* (芸 or 藝). Although a *gei* has not traditionally been used in cultivar grouping, an assemblage of cultivars with a particular *gei* may be designated as a Group. Although the word “*gei*” is not usually incorporated within the epithet, the word “Group” may be added.

*Ex. 9.* Among cultivated forms of *Neofinetia falcata* are the *gei* Hariba (forms with needle-like leaves), Mameba (forms with squat, bean-like leaves), Shiro-fukurin (with white-striped leaves) and Tora-fu (with tiger-banded leaves). Each of these *gei* contains numerous named selections, some of which have been in cultivation for centuries. If these *gei* are recognized as Groups, they are to be written *Neofinetia falcata* Hariba Group, *N. falcata* Mameba Group, *N. falcata* Shiro-fukurin Group, and *N. falcata* Tora-fu Group respectively.

3.4. A cultivar, plant or combination thereof that constitutes part of one Group might also be designated as belonging to another Group, should such assignments have a practical purpose.

*Ex. 10.* *Solanum tuberosum* ‘Desiree’ may be designated part of a Maincrop Group and a Red-skinned Group since both such designations may be practical to buyers of potatoes. It may thus be written *Solanum tuberosum* (Maincrop Group) ‘Desiree’ in one classification or as *Solanum tuberosum* (Red-skinned Group) ‘Desiree’ in another, depending on the purpose of the classification used.

3.5. When a Group is divided or when two or more Groups are united or when the circumscription of a Group is otherwise significantly re-defined in such a way that the resulting Group no longer has the same circumscription a new name must be given for the resulting Group(s).

*Ex. 11.* In the example given above, *Solanum tuberosum* Maincrop Group and *S. tuberosum* Red-skinned Group may be united to form a re-circumscribed *Solanum tuberosum* Maincrop Red-skinned Group.

*Ex. 12.* *Tulipa* Dutch Breeders Group and *T.* English Breeders Group were united into the newly circumscribed *T.* Breeders Group (see J. F. Ch. Dix, *A classified list of tulip names* 4. 1958).

*Ex. 13.* Recent breeding programmes in *Begonia* have led to the recognition of separate Groups within the existing Elatior Group. In due course these may be given new Group names instead of being referred to the Elatior Group as currently circumscribed.



*Ex. 14.* In the 1950s, a number of *Magnolia* hybrids were developed by D. T. Gresham and these have been referred to as Gresham Hybrids or as the Gresham Group. The inclusion of these hybrids in such a Group is unsatisfactory, the Group name being merely a statement of origin with individual members not showing characters in common. Two distinct Groups of Gresham's hybrids have, however, been recognized as Svelte Brunette Group and Buxom Nordic Blonde Group, each of which has a distinct set of characteristics (see J. M. Gardiner, *Magnolias* 118-120. 1989).

#### ARTICLE 4: THE GREX

4.1. The formal category for assembling plants based solely on specified parentage is the grex. It may only be used in orchid nomenclature. The rules for forming grex names are laid out in Art. 23 of this *Code*.

*Note 1.* In current usage the parents of a grex are restricted to the rank of species or another grex.

*Note 2.* A grex name applies to a cross and its reciprocal.

*Ex. 1.* The grex name for the cross *Paphiopedilum Atlantis* grex × *P. Lucifer* grex is *P. Sorel* grex. It is also the name for the reciprocal cross.

4.2. One or more Groups may be formed within a grex (see Art. 3.1).

4.3. When the name of one or more of the component parents of a grex is considered to be a synonym of another, a new name for the grex is not to be established, but the earliest established name for the same grex is to be used.

*Ex. 2.* *Dendrobium ostrinoglossum* has been reduced to synonymy under *D. lasianthera*. The grex *D. Soo Chee* established in 1985 with the stated parentage *D. Caesar* grex × *D. lasianthera* becomes a synonym of *D. Alan Mann* grex which was established in 1970 with the stated parentage *D. Caesar* grex × *D. ostrinoglossum*.

4.4. When the name of one or more parents of a grex is changed for any other nomenclatural or taxonomic reason other than that covered by Art. 4.3, a new grex name is not to be established but the parentage of the grex is re-stated.

*Ex. 3.* × *Renades* Arunoday grex was published with the stated parentage *Aerides multiflorum* × *Renanthera imschootiana*. If *Aerides roseum* is considered distinct from *A. multiflorum* and if one of the parents of the grex is then assigned to *A. roseum*, the stated parentage is changed to *A. roseum* × *R. imschootiana* (see *Orch. Rev. Suppl.* 110: 64. Jul. 2002).

#### ARTICLE 5: THE GRAFT-CHIMAERA

5.1. A graft-chimaera is a plant that results from grafting the vegetative tissues of two or more plants belonging to different taxa, and is thus not a sexual hybrid. Rules for the formation of names of graft-chimaeras at the rank of genus are laid out in Art. 24 of this *Code*. Graft-chimaeras below the rank of genus may be recognized as

cultivars (Art. 2.11 & 24.5).

#### ARTICLE 6: THE DENOMINATION CLASS

6.1. A denomination class is the unit within which the use of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet may not be duplicated except when re-use of an epithet is permitted in accordance with Art. 30 (but see also Art. 6.5 and Art. 21.7).

6.2. A denomination class under the provisions of this *Code* is a single genus or hybrid genus unless a special denomination class has been determined by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration (see Appendix V for the list of current denomination classes that are not a single genus or hybrid genus).

*Ex. 1.* *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* has been designated as a denomination class. Although a cultivar epithet may not be repeated in that species, it may be used once in the remainder of the genus which forms a second denomination class.

*Ex. 2.* Because plants of the genera in the tribe *Hylocereeae* within the family *Cactaceae* are known to hybridize freely and because the taxonomic status of those genera is uncertain, the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration has designated *Hylocereeae* as the denomination class for this group of cacti.

*Note 1.* Notwithstanding Art. 6.2, statutory plant registration authorities sometimes define their own denomination classes for the purposes of particular national or international legislation. Such classes are usually used by those statutory authorities for the same purposes as denomination classes as defined in this *Code*.

6.3. When a denomination class is divided, or when two or more denomination classes are united, or the limits of a denomination class are changed in any way, the new denomination class(es) is to be announced and published by the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority following approval by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration.

6.4. When a denomination class which is a taxon whose nomenclature is governed by the *ICBN* is divided or when two or more such denomination classes are united, the Rules of botanical nomenclature apply (*ICBN*, Art. 11.3) unless a different denomination class is established under the provisions of Art. 6.2.

*Ex. 3.* It has been proposed that the genera *Gaultheria* (validly published in 1753) and *Pernettya* (validly published in 1825) be united. If this proposal is accepted, the combined denomination class must be *Gaultheria* which has priority in publication.

*Ex. 4.* If the segregation of *Lycianthes* and *Lycopersicon* from *Solanum* is accepted, two new denomination classes are automatically created unless it is decided that all three genera be considered part of the same special denomination class under the provisions of Art. 6.2.

6.5. Notwithstanding Art. 6.1, in orchids only, if a cultivar name has been established for more than one cultivar within a denomination class but within

different species or grexes, the cultivar epithet must be linked to the name of the species or grex to which it applies.

*Ex. 5.* The epithet ‘Saint Thomas’ has been applied to a cultivar of both *Lycaste aromatica* and *L. Wyld Spirit* grex; the names must be written *Lycaste aromatica* ‘Saint Thomas’ and *Lycaste Wyld Spirit* grex ‘Saint Thomas’ respectively and not simply as *Lycaste* ‘Saint Thomas’.

## ARTICLE 7: PUBLICATION

7.1. Publication is effected in accordance with Art. 25.

## ARTICLE 8: NAMES AND EPITHETS

8.1. The name of a cultivar or Group consists of a combination of the name of the genus or lower taxon to which it is assigned with a cultivar or Group epithet. These names may be written in several ways.

*Ex. 1.* *Fragaria* ‘Cambridge Favourite’, *Fragaria* × *ananassa* ‘Cambridge Favourite’, strawberry ‘Cambridge Favourite’, ‘Cambridge Favourite’ strawberry, Erdbeere ‘Cambridge Favourite’ (in German), fraisier ‘Cambridge Favourite’ (in French), and ‘Cambridge Favourite’ morangueiro (in Portuguese) are names for the same cultivar.

*Ex. 2.* *Alcea rosea* Chater's Double Group, *Alcea* Chater's Double Group, hollyhock Chater's Double Group, rose trémière Groupe Chater's Double (in French), Stockrose Chaters Doppelte Gruppe (in German), and stokroos Chaters Dubbele Groep (in Dutch) are names for the same Group.

*Note 1.* In legislative texts, especially those dealing with intellectual property rights issues, the term “generic designation” is exactly equivalent to the term “name” as defined in Art. 8.1.

*Note 2.* Anyone using a trademark in marketing a cultivar should be aware of the risk of the trademark becoming generic<sup>1</sup> unless an accepted name is also given for the cultivar. The trademark should always be accompanied by an accepted name (see Art. 17.2 and Appendix X).

8.2. The name of a grex consists of the name of the genus to which it is assigned together with a grex epithet.

*Ex. 3.* *Spiranthes* Awful grex, lady's tresses Awful gx, schroeforchis Awful grex (in Dutch), and Drehwurz Awful grex (in German) are names for the same grex.

8.3. Epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes are to be written in such a way so as to demonstrate the category to which they are assigned (Art. 14-16).

*Ex. 4.* *Iris* ‘Cantab’ is a cultivar of *Iris*, *Begonia* Elatior Group is a Group within *Begonia*, and *Paphiopedilum* Sorel gx is an example of a grex in the genus *Paphiopedilum*.

*Note 3.* See Appendix X for the recommended styling of trade designations.

---

<sup>1</sup> Available for general use; not protected by legislation.

8.4. Epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes are formed according to the provisions of Art. 21, Art. 22, and Art. 23 respectively.

#### **Recommendation 8A**

8A.1. Epithets in names of cultivars, Groups, and grexes should be distinguished typographically from names of the taxa to which they are assigned. For example, they should not be printed in italic typeface if the widespread convention of using italics for names of genera and lower taxa, whose nomenclature is governed by the *ICBN*, is adopted in the work.

Ex. 5. *Aconitum napellus* subsp. *lobelianum* ‘Bergfürst’ and *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* ‘Silver Queen’ should not be printed as *Aconitum napellus* subsp. *lobelianum* ‘Bergfürst’ or *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* ‘Silver Queen’.

Ex. 6. It is preferable to write *Brassica oleracea* Gemmifera Group as opposed to *Brassica oleracea* Gemmifera Group.

Ex. 7. *Bletilla* Penway Dragon grex is preferable to *Bletilla* Penway Dragon grex.

#### **ARTICLE 9: DATE OF A NAME**

9.1. The date of the name of a cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of an intergeneric graft chimaera is that of its establishment (see Art. 27). When the various conditions for establishment are not fulfilled simultaneously, the date of the name is that on which the final condition was fulfilled.

Note 1. No assemblage of plants can be regarded as a cultivar or Group until its category, name, and circumscription has been published. For a grex its name, category, and parentage must be published. For the generic name of an intergeneric graft chimaera its name and parentage must be published.

9.2. Correction of the original spelling of names governed by this *Code* (Art. 35.3) does not affect the date of that name.

#### **ARTICLE 10: ESTABLISHED NAMES**

10.1. An established name is one that is in accordance with Art. 27 of this *Code*.

Note 1. A name that is established under the Rules of this *Code* might not be in conformity with the requirements of local legislation (see also Art. 31.2).

#### **ARTICLE 11: ACCEPTED NAMES**

11.1. The accepted name is the earliest established one (Art. 27.1) that must be adopted for a cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of an intergeneric graft chimaera under the Rules of this *Code* (but see Art. 11.4-11.6 and Art. 29.2).

11.2. Notwithstanding Art. 11.1, if an accepted cultivar name becomes rejected and replaced with a new name by a statutory plant registration authority, or is otherwise replaced by a name designated by such an authority, the earlier accepted name becomes a synonym of the newer name.

*Note 1.* A cultivar name that has become a synonym under the provisions of Art. 11.2 is sometimes used to market a cultivar, in which case it may also be treated as a trade designation (see Appendix X).

*Ex. 1.* ‘Morning Yellow’, the established epithet for a *Clematis* cultivar, was rejected by a statutory plant registration authority; the epithet ‘Cadmy’ was designated instead. *Clematis* ‘Morning Yellow’ is now treated as a synonym of *Clematis* ‘Cadmy’, but may also be used as a trade designation: *Clematis* MORNING YELLOW (‘Cadmy’).

11.3. An accepted name designated in a statutory register remains the accepted name even after the lapse of the statutory protection for the plant concerned.

*Ex. 2.* EU Plant Breeders' Rights Grant No 18698 was granted to *Argyranthemum* ‘Ohmadsant’; the accepted name for the cultivar even though the Grant was surrendered in August 2007, *Argyranthemum* ‘Ohmadsant’ remains the accepted name. It has been sold as *Argyranthemum* SANTANA ‘Ohmadsant’.

11.4. Notwithstanding Art. 11.1, a Group may have more than one accepted name (see Art. 32.2).

*Ex. 3.* *Fagus sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group and *Brassica oleracea* Brussels Sprout Group or names with equivalent epithets in any language other than Latin may be used as alternatives to *F. sylvatica* Atropunicea Group and *B. oleracea* Gemmifera Group.

11.5. A name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* yet which has become widely used may be designated an accepted name if the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority (*a*) publishes the basis for its decision, and (*b*) sends a copy of that publication to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants (see Art. 19.1).

*Ex. 4.* *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* ‘Green Pillar’ is a later name (1960) for *C. lawsoniana* ‘Jackman's Variety’ (1947) and has entered general use to such an extent that the International Cultivar Registration Authority for conifers designated the later name as the accepted name. The basis for that decision was published in the *International conifer register* 3: 89. 1992.

11.6. Notwithstanding Art. 11.5, if an appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority does not exist, or is unwilling to make a proposal, anyone may publish a proposal to accept a name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* if such a name is in widespread use. That published proposal (cf. Art. 25) must be remitted to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants for a ruling on whether such a name is to be conserved (see Art. 19.1).

*Ex. 5.* The names *Dieffenbachia* ‘Exotica Perfecta Compacta’ and *D.* ‘Compacta’ refer to the same cultivar, the latter being more recent. Since the first name is often inaccurately written, it has led to

confusion with the cultivars *D.* ‘Exotica’ and *D.* ‘Exotica Perfecta’. Furthermore, the name is often written as *Dieffenbachia* ‘Exotica Compacta’. It has been proposed that the later name *D.* ‘Compacta’ be the accepted name in order to avoid such ambiguity (see Hettterscheid and van Vliet, *Vakbl. Bloem.* 42(50): 32-37. 1987).

11.7. An International Cultivar Registration Authority may also designate a name as accepted if (a) selecting a competing name from those already in use (Art. 29.2-29.3), or (b) permitting re-use of a name (Art. 30.2).

11.8. If there is an objection to a designation made under Art. 11.5 or Art. 11.7 or a proposal made under Art. 11.6, application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants for a definitive ruling (see Art. 19.1).

## ARTICLE 12: CONSERVED NAMES

12.1. A conserved name is one that, although otherwise contrary to the Rules of this *Code*, must be adopted for a cultivar, Group, or grex by a ruling of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants (see Art. 17).

## ARTICLE 13: TRADE DESIGNATIONS

13.1. A trade designation is not a name regulated under this *Code* but is a device that has been used for marketing a cultivar, Group, or grex in place of its accepted name (Art. 11.1) (see Appendix X).

*Ex. 1.* In 1988, UK Plant Breeders' Rights Grant No 3743 was issued for a rose with the cultivar epithet ‘Korlanum’. The cultivar is marketed as “rose Surrey”, “Rose Sommerwind”, and “rose Vent d’Été” in different countries. These are not names but are to be regarded as being trade designations and may be written rose SURREY (‘Korlanum’), Rose SOMMERWIND (‘Korlanum’), and rose VENT D’ÉTÉ (‘Korlanum’) respectively.

*Ex. 2.* The name *Syringa vulgaris* ‘Andenken an Ludwig Späth’ was established in 1883 and under the Rules of this *Code* is the accepted name for the cultivar. Due to prolonged use of the shortened form “Ludwig Spaeth” by North American nurserymen, the International Cultivar Registration Authority for lilacs has designated *S. vulgaris* LUDWIG SPAETH as being a trade designation for the cultivar.

*Ex. 3.* ATTENTION! oak is not a cultivar name; however, it contains a US registered trademark (Reg. No 1508479) originally owned by Willet N. Wandell and is used as a trade designation to market *Quercus robur* ‘Wandell’ which name was itself established in 1989 on grant to Mr Wandell of US Plant Patent No 6746.

13.2. A trade designation is not to be confused with a synonym. For the purposes of this *Code* a synonym is an established name (Art. 10.1) that is not the accepted name (Art. 11.1).

*Note 1.* Nationally important established cultivar names that are not the earliest name may be taken up and used as trade designations.

*Ex. 4.* The apple cultivars ‘Blauschwanz’, ‘King of the Pippins’, and ‘Mère de Ménage’ have long been known in Sweden as ‘Kesäter’, ‘Guldparmän’, and ‘Husmoder’ respectively; their full names could be written as apple KESÄTER (‘Blauschwanz’), apple GULDPARMÄN (‘King of the Pippins’), and apple HUSMODER (‘Mère de Ménage’).

### CHAPTER III: CONVENTIONS FOR PRESENTATION OF NAMES

#### ARTICLE 14: CULTIVAR STATUS

14.1. Cultivar status is indicated by enclosing the cultivar epithet within single quotation marks. Double quotation marks and the abbreviations cv. and var. are not to be used within a name to distinguish cultivar epithets; such use is to be corrected.

*Note 1.* Single quotation marks are generally effected typographically either by using (‘) at the beginning and (’) at the end of an epithet as used throughout this *Code*, or alternatively by use of the apostrophe (') or other demarcation devices such as (') on each side of the epithet.

*Ex. 1.* *Iris* ‘Cantab’, *Iris* 'Cantab', or *Iris* 'Cantab', not *Iris* “Cantab”, *Iris* cv. Cantab, or *Iris* var. Cantab.

*Ex. 2.* *Pinus sylvestris* ‘Repens’, not *Pinus sylvestris repens*, *Pinus sylvestris* var. Repens, or *Pinus sylvestris* cv. ‘Repens’.

*Note 2.* Prior to 1996 the abbreviation “cv.” preceding a cultivar epithet was permitted as an alternative to the use of single quotation marks. Whilst this *Code* no longer recognizes the use of such a designation, botanic gardens and other collections of plants are likely to continue to bear such an abbreviation on their plant labels until such time as those labels are replaced.

14.2. Cultivars that are thought to be graft-chimaeras are not to be so indicated by use of the addition sign before the cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 3.* *Syringa* ‘Correlata’ is the name for *Syringa* × *chinensis* + *S. vulgaris* and must not be written *Syringa* + ‘Correlata’.

*Ex. 4.* *Camellia* ‘Daisy Eagleson’, thought to be composed of tissues from *C. japonica* and *C. sasanqua* ‘Maiden's Blush’, is not to be written *Camellia* + ‘Daisy Eagleson’.

14.3. Cultivars that are thought to be of hybrid origin are not to be so indicated by use of the multiplication sign before the cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 5.* *Digitalis* ‘Mertonensis’ must not be written *Digitalis* × ‘Mertonensis’; *Distictis* ‘Mrs Rivers’, thought to be a hybrid between *D. buccinatoria* and *D. laxiflora*, is not to be written *Distictis* × ‘Mrs Rivers’.

#### ARTICLE 15: GROUP STATUS

15.1. Formal Group status is indicated by use of the word Group or its equivalent in other languages as the first or final word in the Group epithet.

*Ex. 1.* *Begonia* Elatior Group (in English); *Brassica oleracea* Sabellica Gruppe (in German);



*Hydrangea macrophylla* Groupe Hortensis (in French); *Tulipa* Grupo Darwin (in Spanish); *Rhododendron* Jacqueline-Gruppen (in Swedish).

15.2. If, when using a Roman script, the word Group has to be abbreviated for any reason, the standard contraction “Gp” is to be employed in all languages irrespective of translated equivalents of the word Group.

15.3. When used as part of a cultivar name, a Group epithet is placed within round brackets (parentheses) immediately before the cultivar epithet.

Ex. 2. *Dracaena fragrans* (Deremensis Group) ‘Christianne’; *Fagus sylvatica* (Atropunicea Group) ‘Riversii’; *Brassica oleracea* (Sabauda Group) ‘Cantasa’.

## ARTICLE 16: GREX STATUS

16.1. Grex status is indicated by the use of the word “grex”, or by the standard contraction “gx”.

16.2. The epithets of grexes are not be placed within round brackets (parentheses) when used before cultivar epithets.

Ex. 1. *Cymbidium* Alexanderi gx ‘Westonbirt’ is not be written *Cymbidium* (Alexanderi gx) ‘Westonbirt’.

16.3. Notwithstanding Art. 16.1, names of grexes do not have to have the words “grex” or the abbreviation “gx” incorporated into their epithets (but see also Art. 16.4 and Art. 23.4).

Ex. 2. *Paphiopedilum* Sorel grex and *Cymbidium* Alexanderi gx may be written as *Paphiopedilum* Sorel and *Cymbidium* Alexanderi respectively.

16.4. Where a grex epithet and a Group epithet are cited in the same name, the grex epithet should be followed by the standard contraction “gx” or the word “grex” to distinguish it from the Group epithet.

Ex. 3. Following publication of this edition of the *Code*, Francis Suzuki Group may be established within the grex  $\times$  *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick. This should be written as  $\times$  *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick grex Francis Suzuki Group or  $\times$  *Rhynchosophrocattleya* Marie Lemon Stick gx Francis Suzuki Gp to distinguish the grex and Group epithets.

Ex. 4. Penway Dancer Group may be established within the grex *Bletilla* Penway Prelude and the cultivar ‘Ballerina’ may be established within Penway Dancer Group. This should be written as *Bletilla* Penway Prelude grex (Penway Dancer Group) ‘Ballerina’ or *Bletilla* Penway Prelude gx

(Penway Dancer Gp) ‘Ballerina’.

### ARTICLE 17: TRADE DESIGNATION STATUS

17.1. Trade designations may not be placed within demarcating quotation marks.

17.2. If cited, trade designations must always be accompanied by their accepted names.

17.3. If cited, trade designations must always be distinguished typographically from cultivar, Group, and grex epithets.

*Ex. 1.* *Choisya ternata* ‘Limo’ was established on grant of Plant Breeders' Rights, but it has been marketed as “*C. ternata* Goldfingers”. To distinguish the trade designation from the cultivar epithet, the name must be distinguished typographically as, for example, styled *Choisya ternata* GOLDFINGERS ‘Limo’. Other examples of such typographical distinction may be found under Art. 13.

*Ex. 2.* Trade designations in Chinese may be distinguished typographically in different ways (the typography of small capitals not being applicable), such as use of 黑体 typeface (Heiti or Black Type) or square brackets. Thus *Rosa* PEACE (‘Madame A. Meilland’) might be written as 和平月季 (‘Madame A. Meilland’) or [和平]月季 (‘Madame A. Meilland’).

*Note 1.* For further guidance on trade designations see Appendix X.

## CHAPTER IV: LIMITATION OF THE PRINCIPLE OF PRIORITY

### ARTICLE 18: STARTING POINTS IN NOMENCLATURE

18.1. Establishment of cultivar, Group, and grex names in any denomination class is treated as starting with a list or publication designated for that denomination class by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration preferably on application from the relevant International Cultivar Registration Authority or, in the absence of such an authority, in consultation with appropriate organizations. In the absence of such an approved list or publication, establishment starts with Linnaeus's *Species plantarum*, both volumes of which in this *Code* are, as in the *ICBN*, treated as having been published simultaneously on 1 May 1753.

*Ex. 1.* The starting point for cultivar and Group names in *Syringa* is S.D. McKelvey, *The lilac*. Macmillan, New York. 1928. This decision, originally made by the Nomenclature Committee at the XII International Horticultural Congress (Berlin, 1936), was endorsed by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration.

18.2. The starting point for orchid grex names (Art. 3.3) is 2 January 1858, the date on which publication of the name for the first artificial orchid cross recorded in Europe occurred (see *Gard. chron.* 1858: 4. 1858).

18.3. The starting point for the generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras starts with Linnaeus's *Species plantarum*, both volumes of which in this *Code* are, as in the *ICBN*, treated as having been published simultaneously on 1 May 1753.

### ARTICLE 19: CONSERVATION OF NAMES

19.1. If it is found that a name that is contrary to the Rules of this *Code* has been (a) designated as accepted by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (Art. 11.5 and Art. 11.7), or (b) proposed to be accepted by anyone else (Art. 11.6), or (c) if the designation or proposed acceptance of a name is in dispute (Art. 11.8), application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants to rule on whether the name be conserved as the accepted name.

19.2. The basis for any conservation proposal must be provided for the Secretary of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants at the time of application; this must include reference to any publications that support the

application with copies wherever possible.

*19.3.* The decision of the Commission shall be published (Art. 25.1). Conservation becomes effective from the date of publication (Art. 26.2) of the Commission's ruling.

## CHAPTER V: NAMING PLANTS IN CULTIVATION

### ARTICLE 20: NAMES OF WILD PLANTS BROUGHT INTO CULTIVATION

20.1. Plants brought from the wild into cultivation and which are not subsequently classified as cultivars or Groups retain the names that are applied to the same plants growing in nature.

*Ex. 1.* *Fagus sylvatica*, the common or European beech, carries the same Latin name in cultivation as in the wild.

20.2. Plants of a species or lower taxon brought into cultivation may not demonstrate the range of variation associated with that taxon in the wild. If an assemblage of those plants has one or more characters that make it worth distinguishing, it may be given a cultivar or Group name.

*Ex. 2.* The distinctive plant grown in the Sir Harold Hillier Gardens as *Quercus frainetto* was the source (the ortet) for a large number of plants (the ramets) distributed by the nursery associated with those gardens and the resulting cultivar was named *Q. frainetto* ‘Hungarian Crown’ by A. J. Coombes in *The Hillier manual of trees and shrubs*, ed. 6, 348. 1991.

*Ex. 3.* *Lessingia filaginifolia* ‘Silver Carpet’ with distinctive silvery foliage and pink-lavender flowers was selected from a wild population of *L. filaginifolia* collected from coastal bluffs exposed to ocean spray in Monterey County, California.

*Ex. 4.* *Fagus sylvatica* Atropunicea Group may be circumscribed to include all purple-leaved plants of the species. Likewise, *F. sylvatica* Cuprea Group may be circumscribed to include all plants of the species that have copper-coloured leaves.

### ARTICLE 21: NAMES OF CULTIVARS

#### §1: GENERAL PROVISIONS

21.1. The name of a cultivar is a combination of the correct name of the genus or lower taxon to which it is assigned under the *ICBN*, or its unambiguous common name, with a cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 1.* The cultivar *Galanthus* ‘John Gray’ may also be referred to as snowdrop ‘John Gray’.

21.2. The minimum requirement is for a cultivar epithet to accompany the name of

the genus in Latin form or a common name equivalent when that common name is unambiguous. When a cultivar can be assigned to a taxon at species rank or below, the name of that taxon (or its unambiguous common name equivalent) may accompany the cultivar epithet instead (see also Art. 21.7), in order to convey further information about the plant (see also Rec. 21A).

*Ex. 2.* *Achillea* ‘Cerise Queen’ may also be called *Achillea millefolium* ‘Cerise Queen’ or yarrow ‘Cerise Queen’; potato ‘Sharpe’s Express’ may also be called *Solanum* ‘Sharpe’s Express’ or *Solanum tuberosum* ‘Sharpe’s Express’.

*Ex. 3.* *Camellia* ‘Shōjō-no-mai’, *Magnolia* ‘William Watson’, *Pisum* ‘Consort’, × *Triticosecale* ‘Siskiyou’ are combinations of the name of a genus in Latin form accompanied by a cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 4.* Apple ‘James Grieve’, potato ‘Cara’, poire ‘Doyenné du Comice’, ‘Puzol’ pepino, ‘William Sim’ carnation, and ‘Golden Harvest’ daffodil are acceptable names since they are unambiguously equivalent to *Malus domestica* ‘James Grieve’, *Solanum tuberosum* ‘Cara’, *Pyrus* ‘Doyenné du Comice’, *Solanum muricatum* ‘Puzol’, *Dianthus* ‘William Sim’, and *Narcissus* ‘Golden Harvest’ respectively.

*Ex. 5.* *Geranium* ‘Mrs Kendall Clark’ may be written *Geranium pratense* ‘Mrs Kendall Clark’ so as to include the species epithet; *Cedrus* ‘Mt St Catherine’ may be written *Cedrus libani* subsp. *atlantica* ‘Mt St Catherine’ so as to include the name of the subspecies to which it has been assigned.

*Note 1.* When the name of the genus or lower taxon is obvious from the context without confusion, the cultivar epithet may appear alone or separate from the Latin or common name.

*Ex. 6.* In the German magazine *Gartenpraxis* (July 2008: 8-14) in an article on Taglilien the genus *Hemerocallis* is obvious from the context and therefore cultivar epithets, including ‘Knights in White Satin’, ‘Now and Forever’, ‘Potion for Passion’, ‘Pure and Simple’, and ‘Trimmed in Gold’, are given in the text, in captions and in a table without further reference to the genus.

21.3. Each word of a cultivar epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise. Exceptions are words after a hyphen (see Art. 35.11) unless they are proper nouns, conjunctions, and prepositions other than those in the first word of the epithet (see also Art. 21.25).

*Ex. 7.* A cultivar epithet commemorating the town of 's-Hertogenbosch in The Netherlands is to be written ‘s-Hertogenbosch’ and not ‘S-Hertogenbosch’; similarly, the epithet commemorating the town IJsselham (spelled with the initial two letters in capitals) is to be written ‘IJsselham’ and not ‘Ijsselham’.

*Ex. 8.* *Malus domestica* ‘Beauty of Bath’, *Rosa* ‘Pompon de Paris’, *Prunus* ‘Hikaru Genji’ (the epithet commemorating a 10th century literary hero), and *Saxifraga fortunei* ‘Akane-Fuji’ are acceptable names.

21.4. A cultivar epithet remains unaltered when the name of the taxon to which it is

assigned is changed unless, as may occur under Art. 6.3, the epithet is already in use in the denomination class to which it is re-assigned. In this case a new epithet will be required (but see also Art. 11.5 and Art. 21.9).

*Ex. 9.* The following names all refer to the same cultivar: *Endymion hispanicus* ‘Rose Queen’, *Hyacinthoides hispanica* ‘Rose Queen’, *Hyacinthoides* × *massartiana* ‘Rose Queen’, *Scilla campanulata* ‘Rose Queen’, *Scilla hispanica* ‘Rose Queen’, *Scilla hispanica* var. *campanulata* ‘Rose Queen’.

## §2: FORMATION OF CULTIVAR EPITHETS IN LATIN FORM

*21.5.* The final epithet in Latin form of the correct name under the *ICBN* of a taxon at the rank of species or below is to be retained as the cultivar epithet if that taxon is subsequently reclassified as a cultivar (see also Rec. 21B).

*Ex. 10.* *Mahonia japonica* and *Primula denticulata* var. *cachmeriana* are the correct names under the *ICBN* for these taxa when they are respectively considered to be a species and a varietas. They may, however, be regarded as cultivars instead, in which case the names are to be written as *Mahonia* ‘Japonica’ and *Primula denticulata* ‘Cachmeriana’.

*Ex. 11.* The double-flowered form of *Spiraea cantoniensis* was named *S. cantoniensis* forma *lanceata* by Zabel in 1903. This is the correct name under the *ICBN* at the rank of forma. When the double-flowered form is regarded as a cultivar instead and assigned to the same species, the name is to be written *Spiraea cantoniensis* ‘Lanceata’.

*21.6.* In situations in which Art. 21.5 does not apply, the epithet of any name in Latin form published prior to 1 January 1959, even if it is not validly published under the *ICBN*, that meets the requirements for establishment as a cultivar name under this *Code* (Art. 27.1), may be adopted as the cultivar epithet, if the plants to which it was applied are now considered to represent a cultivar.

*Note 2.* Reasons why names might not be validly published under the *ICBN* include being published without being accompanied by a description or a reference to a description (contrary to its Art. 32.1) or being published without clear indication of rank on or after 1 January 1953 (contrary to its Art. 35.1). Providing that publication of such a name for plants now considered to be a cultivar occurred prior to 1 January 1959 and met the general requirements for establishment of a cultivar name, and no correct name under the *ICBN* exists, the Latin epithet used for these plants may be adopted as the cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 12.* “*Veronica Sutherlandii*” was published by the New Zealand nursery Duncan and Davies (Nurs. Cat. 1925: 23. 1925) without a description or reference to a description (a “nomen nudum”). The publication meets the requirements of Art. 27.1 of this *Code* and so when the species is treated as a cultivar, the epithet is to be adopted in the cultivar name as was done by L. J. Metcalf in *The cultivation of New Zealand trees and shrubs* 267. 1972 where the cultivar was described under *Hebe pinguiifolia* ‘Sutherlandii’.

*Ex. 13.* *Weigela floribunda foliis purpureis* was published by Carrière, *Rev. Hort.* 1921: 278-9. 1921. Although this name is not validly published under the *ICBN* (cf. Art. 23.1 and 24.2 of that *Code*), as Carrière was dealing with variants of *W. floribunda*, the cultivar name *W. floribunda* ‘Foliis Purpureis’ may be considered established under the provisions of this *Code*.

*Ex. 14.* *Juniperus excelsa viridis stricta* was published by Adrien Sénéclauze in 1867 (*Les conifères*: 91), but this is not a validly published name at any rank under the *ICBN* (cf. Art. 23.1, 23.6 and 24.2 of that *Code*). It would appear that the infraspecific epithet “viridis stricta” was intended, but this represents two adjectives in the nominative (*ICBN* Art. 23.6) and so is unacceptable under the *ICBN*, but as a cultivar the name is written *Juniperus excelsa* ‘Viridis Stricta’.

21.7. If a cultivar epithet in Latin form established before 1 January 1959 has been repeated within a denomination class (Art. 6.1) but within different taxa, the cultivar epithet must be linked to the name of the taxon to which it applies.

*Ex. 15.* *Juniperus chinensis* ‘Variegata’, *Juniperus excelsa* ‘Variegata’, *Juniperus horizontalis* ‘Variegata’, *Juniperus procumbens* ‘Variegata’, and *Juniperus sabina* ‘Variegata’ may not be written as *Juniperus* ‘Variegata’ and to avoid confusion must always include the respective specific epithet.

21.8. If a cultivar epithet is an adjective derived from an epithet in Latin form, it must agree in gender with that of the name of the genus to which it is assigned.

*Ex. 16.* *Begonia* ‘Elegantissima Superba’; *Calluna vulgaris* ‘Aurea’; *Hibiscus syriacus* ‘Violaceus’; *Malus floribunda* ‘Arnoldiana’.

21.9. If a cultivar epithet is an adjective derived from an epithet in Latin form transferred to a genus with another gender, the gender of the epithet is changed to agree with that of the new genus.

*Ex. 17.* When *Veronica virginica* (feminine) is transferred to the genus *Veronicastrum* (neuter), the cultivar name *Veronica virginica* ‘Alba’ is altered to *Veronicastrum virginicum* ‘Album’.

21.10. If a noun is used as part of a cultivar epithet and is qualified with an adjective, the latter agrees with the gender of the noun, not the gender of the generic name concerned.

*Ex. 18.* A *Rhododendron* cultivar named after Reinhold Ambrosius (a masculine personal name) would be *R.* ‘Ambrosius Superbus’ not ‘Ambrosius Superbum’, the gender of *Rhododendron* being neuter.

### **§3: FORMATION OF CULTIVAR EPITHETS IN A LANGUAGE OTHER THAN LATIN**

21.11. For a cultivar name to be established on or after 1 January 1959, its epithet is to comprise a word or words in any language but may not be entirely in Latin except as permitted under Art. 21.5, 21.6, and Art. 21.22 (see also Art. 21.14 and Art. 21.25).



*Ex. 19.* The epithets ‘Washington Bullatus’, ‘Loderi Red’, ‘Aurea Bennett’, and ‘Nani Baker’ could all be established; “Aurea” is also a girl’s name in Spain and “Nani” the Hindi term for the grandmother on the mother’s side.

*21.12.* Notwithstanding Art. 21.11, Latin words or words in Latin form may be used as new cultivar epithets when it can be demonstrated that they are current in a language other than Latin for example as terms, common phrases, personal names, and place names.

*Ex. 20.* Bicolor, campus, major, minor, museum, and peninsula are Latin words currently used in modern languages; Aurora Borealis, Corpus Christi, and Habeas Corpus are Latin terms that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

*Ex. 21.* “Caveat emptor”, “nil desperandum”, “noli me tangere”, and “non sequitur” are Latin phrases used in modern languages that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

*Ex. 22.* Cicero, Claudia, Claudius, Gordianus, Julia, Julius Caesar, and Paulus are Latin personal names that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

*Ex. 23.* Africa, Bognor Regis, India, Londinium, Marston Magna, Mons, and Nova Scotia are place names in Latin that may be used as, or in, cultivar epithets.

*21.13.* For a cultivar name to be established on or after 1 January 1996 its epithet must consist of no more than 30 characters (Roman letters, numbers, and permitted punctuation marks or symbols) overall excluding spaces and the demarcating marks.

*Ex. 24.* After 1 January 1996 a name with the cultivar epithet ‘Madame la Comtesse Oswald de Kerchove de Denterghem’ could not be established.

*21.14.* The epithet of a cultivar name does not have to consist of an existing word or words but may be a novel invention.

*Ex. 25.* The first word in the cultivar epithets of the onions ‘NuMex Arthur’, ‘NuMex Crimson’, ‘NuMex Freedom’, and ‘NuMex Solano’ is an invented word identifying New Mexico State University’s Agricultural Experiment Station as the place of origin of these cultivars (see *HortScience* 37: 705-708. 2002 & 38: 306-310. 2003).

*Ex. 26.* ‘AC Avonlea’ is a cultivar of durum wheat developed at one of the stations of Agriculture Canada (AC); ‘OAC Baxter’ is a malting barley cultivar developed at the Ontario Agriculture College, Guelph, Ontario, Canada.

*Ex. 27.* The names of the roses ‘Harwestsun’, ‘Harwex’, ‘Harwharry’, and ‘Harwicklow’ were established using the convention followed by rose breeders whereby the first three letters indicate the breeder. In the above case the breeder was R. Harkness & Co. (see *Modern Roses* 11. 216. 2003).

**§4: PROHIBITIONS IN CULTIVAR EPITHETS**

21.15. A cultivar name may not be established if on or after 1 January 2004 its epithet consists solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or a single letter or numerals in combination with a punctuation mark.

*Ex. 28.* Names containing the epithets ‘K’, ‘U!’, ‘400’, ‘21!’, and ‘MMIV’ may not be established, but the epithets ‘Hundred’, ‘10 Downing Street’, ‘461 Ocean Boulevard’, ‘77 Sunset Strip’, ‘Apollo 13’, ‘Catch 22’, ‘Henry VIII’, ‘Pope Leo X’, ‘4th July’, ‘M9’ and ‘Happy 21st Birthday’ may be established.

21.16. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1959 the cultivar epithet contains the words “form” or “variety” or their abbreviations or equivalents in other languages.

*Ex. 29.* *Persicaria affinis* ‘Lowndes’s Variety’ is not established because it was published after 1958 (the accepted name is *P. affinis* ‘Donald Lowndes’); *Iris chrysographes* ‘Inshriach Form’ is not established because it was published after 1958 (the accepted name is *Iris chrysographes* ‘Inshriach’); *Hebe* ‘Longacre Variety’ and *Hypericum* ‘Rowallane Variety’ are both established because they were published before 1959.

21.17. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet contains the following words or their equivalents in any language: “cultivar”, “grex”, “group”, “hybrid”, “maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “series”, “sport”, and “strain” or the plural form of these words, or the words “improved” and “transformed” or their equivalents in any language.

21.18. A name is not established if on or after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet when written in Roman script contains punctuation marks except the apostrophe (’), the comma (,), up to two non-adjacent exclamation marks (!), the period or full-stop (.), or the hyphen (-), the forward slash (/) or backward slash (\) symbols.

*Ex. 30.* The epithets ‘Beryl, Viscountess Cowdray’, ‘Jeanne d’Arc’, ‘Oh Boy!’, ‘E.A. Bowles’, ‘Sing, Sing, Sing’, ‘ENT/100’, ‘Go-go Dancer’, ‘Westward Ho!’, and ‘Wham! Blam!’ are acceptable, but ‘Help!!!’, and ‘Simon Who?’ are not.

*Ex. 31.* The cultivar epithet ‘N!xau’, commemorating a San actor from Namibia is acceptable. The exclamation mark in this case represents one of the “click” sounds of the San language.

21.19. A name is not established if its cultivar epithet contains fractions or symbols except as specified in Art. 21.18 (see also Art. 35.8 for symbols that are to be transcribed).

*Ex. 32.* Names with epithets ‘Happy@home.com’, ‘Sambuca®’, ‘\$Million’, ‘100%’, ‘Two+Two’,

and ‘½ Empty’ could not be established but names with epithets ‘Million Dollars’, ‘Two Plus Two’, and ‘Half Empty’ could be established.

21.20. Except where linguistic custom demands, a name is not established if after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet contains the Latin or common name(s) of the genus to which it is assigned.

Ex. 33. *Castanea* ‘Pale Chestnut’, *Gladiolus* ‘Pink Gladiolus’, *Narcissus* ‘Davis Daff’, *Narcissus* ‘Granny’s Daffodil’, *Paeonia* ‘Sussex Peony’, *Phlox* ‘Phlox of Sheep’, and *Rhododendron* ‘Rhododendron Mad’ may not be established.

Ex. 34. *Dianthus* ‘Rupert’s Pink’ is established; “pink” is not the common name for all plants in the genus *Dianthus*.

Ex. 35. *Prunus* ‘Sato-zakura’ is established; “zakura” is the Japanese word for flowering cherries, rather than a name for the whole genus.

Ex. 36. *Pyrus bretschneideri* ‘Ya Li’, containing the word “li” which is the Chinese name for pear (*Pyrus*) and which is so closely associated with “ya” that its inclusion in the epithet, is acceptable.

21.21. Notwithstanding Art. 21.20, Japanese names transcribed into a Roman script that include the vernacular name of a species may be rendered as Romanized cultivar names on removal of the word equating to the Japanese name of the genus providing always that the resulting epithet in Roman script remains unique within the denomination class (see Art. 6.1).

Ex. 37. “Ōgon-Setouchi-Gibōshi” is the name used in Japan for a yellow-leaved cultivar of *Hosta pycnophylla*. The cultivar epithet ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’ could be derived from this name by removal of the word “Gibōshi” (which equates to the generic name *Hosta*) and by retention of the word “Setouchi” which is the vernacular name of the species.

Ex. 38. “Fuiiri-Tenjiku-Suge” becomes *Carex* ‘Fuiiri-Tenjiku’, “Tenjiku-Suge” being the vernacular name for *Carex phyllocephala* with “Suge” being the vernacular name for *Carex*; *Nelumbo* ‘Ōga-Hasu’ becomes *Nelumbo* ‘Ōga’ where “Hasu” in Japanese means *Nelumbo* (*N. nucifera*).

21.22. A name is not established if after 1 January 1959 its cultivar epithet is the name of a genus or the common name of a species or other denomination class if use of such epithets might lead to confusion.

Ex. 39. The names *Erica* ‘Calluna’ and snowdrop ‘Snowflake’ may not be established since, by referring to them in the market place as ‘Calluna’ heather and ‘Snowflake’ snowdrop respectively, people might be confused. However names such as ash ‘Veronica’, *Dianthus* ‘Victoria’, *Lilium* ‘Erica’, *Magnolia* ‘Daphne’, and *Rhododendron* ‘Calypso’ would all be acceptable since, although the epithets are names of genera, they are unlikely to cause confusion if written ‘Veronica’ ash, ‘Victoria’ *Dianthus*, ‘Erica’ *Lilium*, ‘Daphne’ *Magnolia*, and ‘Calypso’ *Rhododendron* respectively.

Ex. 40. *Calluna* ‘Heather’, *Geranium* ‘Herb Robert’, and *Silene* ‘Jupiterbloem’ could not be established since “heather” is the English common name for the genus *Calluna*, “herb robert” is an English common name for *Geranium robertianum*, and “jupiterbloem” is a Dutch common name for *Silene flos-jovis*.

Ex. 41. The names of the plum cultivars ‘Apricot’ and ‘Peach’, or *Prunus domestica* ‘Apricot’ and *Prunus domestica* ‘Peach’ (Hogg, 1866), published well before 1959, can be considered established names.

Ex. 42. *Cattleya warneri* ‘Poa’, *Dahlia* ‘Northwest Cosmos’ (named after the American baseball/football team), *Dianthus* ‘Giulia Viola’, and *Rhododendron* ‘Nancy Stipa’ are established names.

Ex. 43. *Lilium* ‘Henri’ is acceptable even though there is a *Lilium henryi*; *Clematis* ‘Florida Blue’ is acceptable even though there is a *Clematis florida* (“Florida” only forms part of the cultivar epithet and is a place name).

21.23. A name is not established if after 1 January 1996 its cultivar epithet is so similar to an existing epithet in the denomination class to which the cultivar is assigned that the name might cause confusion.

Ex. 44. Were it proposed for publication after 1 January 1996, *Ilex* ‘Green Point’ could not be established since it might be confused with the existing *I. crenata* ‘Greenpoint’.

Ex. 45. A cultivar name with the epithet ‘Susannah’ could not be established if there was an existing ‘Susanna’ in the same denomination class. However, ‘Susanne’ might not be considered confusing if the difference in pronunciation is distinct.

Ex. 46. *Erica carnea* ‘Mrs D. E. Maxwell’ could not be established since it may become confused with the existing *E. vagans* ‘Mrs D. F. Maxwell’. However, *E. carnea* ‘S. A. Maxwell’ could be established.

Ex. 47. The cultivar name *Narcissus* ‘Miss Amy Johnson’ could not be established since it could be confused with the existing *N.* ‘Amy Johnson’.

Ex. 48. *Dianthus* ‘Sara’ and *D.* ‘Zara’ could not both be established; *Dianthus* ‘Samur’ and *D.* ‘Samurai’ could both be established.

Ex. 49. *Rhododendron* ‘Lady White’ and *R.* ‘Ladies’ White’ could both be established.

21.24. A name is not established if after 1 January 1959 its cultivar epithet might exaggerate the merits of the cultivar and which might become confusing through the later introduction of new cultivars having comparable characters.

Ex. 50. Had they been published after 1958, apple ‘Earliest of All’, *Vicia faba* ‘Longest Possible’, and *Laburnum* ‘Latest and Longest’ could not be established.

*Ex. 51.* *Epiphyllum* ‘Germany’s Best’ could not be established; *Phlox* ‘Excellent’ could be established.

### §5: OTHER PROVISIONS

21.25. A cultivar epithet may also be in the form of a code of up to 10 characters excluding spaces and that consists of no more than four alternating sets of a letter or letters and a number or numbers.

*Ex. 52.* Names with the epithets ‘12AB34CD’, ‘123-abcd4’, ‘123/ABCD4’, and ‘Abc1234de’ may be established but names with the epithets ‘12-AB 34 CD 1’, and ‘1A2B/33’ may not be established.

*Ex. 53.* A number of clonal rootstocks were developed by East Malling Research Station (UK) that were distributed with a sequence of cultivar epithets such as ‘M9’, ‘M16’, ‘M25’, ‘M26’, and ‘M27’.

*Ex. 54.* *Helianthus annuus* cultivars with the epithets ‘E9730LM’, ‘HA-OL 9’, ‘NS-HA26’, ‘PF 090 A’, ‘H 209 A/B’, and ‘PR64A82’ have been established on grant of Plant Breeders’ Rights.

*Note 3.* Plants are sometimes circulated under collector’s or breeder’s numbers that are often made up of sequences of letters and numbers or numbers only. These are not to be taken as being cultivar epithets (see also Rec. 21C).

*Ex. 55.* *Corydalis taliensis* ACE 2443 must not be written *Corydalis taliensis* ‘ACE 2443’ nor *Corydalis taliensis* ‘Ace 2443’ since in this case the epithet is the collectors’ reference number (Alpine Garden Society Expedition, China, 1995).

### Recommendation 21A

21A.1. When a cultivar can be assigned to a taxon at species rank or below, the name of this taxon, or its unambiguous common name, should accompany the cultivar epithet, as this conveys further information about the plant which may be valuable to users.

*Ex. 56.* *Cyclamen hederifolium* var. *hederifolium* f. *albiflorum* (Bowles’s Apollo Group) ‘Artemis’ is more informative than *Cyclamen* ‘Artemis’.

### Recommendation 21B

21B.1. The epithet of a cultivar name should not duplicate the final epithet in Latin form of the correct name under the *ICBN* of the taxon at the rank of species or below to which it is assigned. The final epithet of the next later name acceptable under Art. 21.6 that applies to the cultivar should be used, or if one does not exist the cultivar should be given a new epithet.

*Ex. 57.* *Hosta sieboldii* published by Ingram (*Baileya* 15(1): 29. 1967) was based on the name *Hemerocallis sieboldii* of Paxton (*Mag. Bot.* 5: 25. March, 1838) which was itself based on a variegated plant. If Paxton’s plant is considered referable to a cultivar being grown today, the cultivar should not be referred to as *Hosta sieboldii* ‘Sieboldii’ but should be given the epithet

'Albomarginata', based on the next validly published name under the ICBN, *Funckia albomarginata* of Hooker (*Bot. Mag.* tab. 3567. May, 1838).

*Ex. 58.* *Viburnum* × *bodnantense* 'Dawn' was established to distinguish the original cultivar upon which *Viburnum* × *bodnantense* (the name for the plants produced by crossing *V. farreri* with *V. grandiflorum*) was based.

*Ex. 59.* *Epimedium* × *warleyense* was validly published by W. T. Stearn (*Journ. Linn. Soc. Bot.* 51: 519-520. 1938) and may be interpreted to encompass the progeny of crosses between *E. alpinum* and *E. pinnatum*. The nomenclatural type for the name was a specimen from a garden plant that was separately named 'Willmottiae' by E. S. Lyttel (*My Garden* 12: 486. 1937). The full name of the cultivar on which the hybrid epithet was based is thus *E.* × *warleyense* 'Willmottiae' and this name separates the original cultivar from other distinguishable progeny of the same cross.

### Recommendation 21C

*21C.1.* Epithets of unestablished working names, used for example while a plant is undergoing trial or evaluation, should not be taken up for other cultivars where their existence is known.

*Ex. 60.* *Dianthus* LADY MADONNA ('WP04 Opal') was known while undergoing trial as both "Opal" and "Devon Opal". These unestablished working names should not be taken up for other cultivars.

### Recommendation 21D

*21D.1.* A cultivar epithet should be as short as practical and should not consist of nor contain excessively long words that may be difficult to write or pronounce (see Art. 21.13).

*Ex. 61.* The epithet 'Diplomgartenbauinspektor' may be considered excessively long and difficult for some to pronounce or write.

### Recommendation 21E

*21E.1.* A cultivar name whose epithet is or contains the name of a living person should not be published unless that person has given permission for their name to be used.

### Recommendation 21F

*21F.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet might cause confusion by consisting of terms that are likely to be encountered in the market place.

*Ex. 62.* Names with the cultivar epithets 'Bonsai', 'Ten Dollars', 'Two Litres', 'Container Grown', 'Poisonous', 'Post Paid' and 'Tax Free' should be avoided. However, the epithets 'Million Dollars' and 'Ten Bob Note' are unlikely to lead to confusion in marketing plants.

**Recommendation 21G**

*21G.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet consists solely of a word or words that may be descriptive (adjectival) and that could refer to some character or characters common or with the potential to become common in cultivars of the denomination class concerned.

*Ex. 63.* Names with the cultivar epithets ‘Blanche’ (a given name for a woman or French for “white”), ‘Large’, ‘Large White’, ‘Double Red’, ‘Ogon’ (Japanese for “gold” or “golden”), and ‘Variegated’ should be avoided.

**Recommendation 21H**

*21H.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if it may give the impression that the cultivar has one or more characters that it does not possess.

*Ex. 64.* *Iris* ‘American Flag’ should not be published if it is not a “flag” iris (where “flag” is a term used by iris growers to denote a particular sort of iris flower); apple ‘Redskin’ should not be published if the apple concerned is known not to have a red skin.

**Recommendation 21I**

*21I.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet may give the impression that the cultivar is derived from or related to another when this is not the case.

*Ex. 65.* *Lilium* ‘Bellingham Supreme’ should not be published if the cultivar does not have the characteristics shared by other members of *Lilium* Bellingham Group; apple ‘Bramley's Wonder’ should not be published if it is not derived from the apple ‘Bramley's Seedling’.

**Recommendation 21J**

*21J.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet may give a false impression concerning the identity of its raiser, breeder, introducer or origins.

*Ex. 66.* *Potentilla* ‘Davidson's Red’ should not be published if the raiser was not a person called Davidson; apple ‘East Malling Champion’ should not be published if the cultivar has no history of association with the research station at East Malling in the United Kingdom noted for breeding work on apples.

**Recommendation 21K**

*21K.1.* A cultivar name should not be published if its epithet might cause offence (see also Art. 31.8).

**ARTICLE 22: NAMES OF GROUPS**

22.1. The name of a Group is the combination of the correct name of the genus under the *ICBN*, or its unambiguous common name, or lower taxon to which it is assigned, with a Group epithet (see Art. 8.1, Art. 11.4, and Art. 32.2).

*Ex. 1.* *Allium cepa* Shallot Group; *Brassica oleracea* Gemmifera Group; *Dracaena Deremensis* Group; *Hydrangea* Lacecap Group; *Rosa Polyantha* Group.

*Note 1.* When the name of the genus or lower taxon is obvious from the context without confusion, the Group epithet may appear alone or separate from the Latin or common name.

22.2. A Group epithet must be either one word or several words with which the word “Group”, or its equivalent in other modern languages, is associated.

*Ex. 2.* *Abutilon Darwinii* Group; *Brassica rapa* Pak-choi Group; *Fagus sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group; *Solanum aethiopicum* Gilo Group; *Vicia faba* Elatae Group.

22.3. Each word of a Group epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise. Notwithstanding linguistic custom, the word “Group” or its equivalent in other languages is always to be written with a capital initial letter when rendered in a Roman script.

22.4. In forming the part of a Group epithet associated with the word “Group” the Rules as in Art. 21.5-21.24 and Rec. 21A-K (excluding Rec. 21G), governing the formation of cultivar epithets shall apply (reading “Group” for “cultivar” throughout); however, with Art. 21.20, established practice should be followed where this does not cause confusion.

*Ex. 3.* In vegetable crops such as *Beta* (beets), following widespread established practice, the name *Beta* Spinach Beet Group is to be regarded as acceptable.

*Ex. 4.* The epithet Cumberland and Westmorland Purple Group would be acceptable (Art. 21.13).

22.5. Notwithstanding Art. 21.17 the word “Group”, or its equivalent in any language, is considered part of the Group epithet (see Art. 15.1). It can only occur once in a Group epithet.

22.6. If a Group epithet is formed from a grex epithet established prior to 1 January 2004, the former grex epithet is used with the word “Group” replacing the word “grex” to form the Group epithet.

*Ex. 5.* *Lilium* Celica Group has been established, originally as a grex, to cover all the progeny of the cross between *L.* ‘Pumpkin Sweet’ and *L.* ‘Unique’, which share the characteristics given in its



description in the *International lily register*, Suppl. 11: 8. 1993.

*Ex. 6.* Under the provisions of previous editions of this *Code*, *Lilium* Mount Shasta grex was designated for hybrids between *L. kelloggii* and *L. pardalinum*; since the grex system is no longer used within lilies, the name is now *Lilium* Mount Shasta Group.

*Ex. 7.* *Rhododendron* Jacqueline Group has been designated for all the progeny of the cross between *R.* ‘Albatross’ and *R. facetum* (see the *International rhododendron register* 124. 1958).

### Recommendation 22A

*22A.1.* The name of a Group should not be published if its epithet is the same as, or is confusingly similar to, an epithet of a cultivar name that has been previously established in the denomination class concerned unless it is thought that the category of Group is more appropriate than the category of cultivar.

*Ex. 8.* *Hosta* Frances Williams Group should not be published after establishment of *H.* ‘Frances Williams’ for so long as the cultivar is maintained.

*Ex. 9.* *Ranunculus ficaria* Brazen Hussy Group might be published if it is thought that the cultivar *R.* ‘Brazen Hussy’ is no longer distinguishable from other plants that have the same characteristics to the extent that such an assemblage no longer meets the criteria for being recognized as a cultivar (Art. 2.3).

## ARTICLE 23: NAMES OF GREXES

*23.1.* The name of a grex is a combination of the correct name of the genus under the *ICBN*, or its unambiguous common name, with a grex epithet.

*23.2.* Each word of a grex epithet must start with an initial capital letter unless linguistic custom demands otherwise (see also Rec. 23A).

*23.3.* In forming the part of the grex epithet associated with the word grex the Rules as in Art. 21.5-21.24 and Rec. 21A-K, governing the formation of cultivar epithets shall apply (reading “grex” for “cultivar” throughout).

*Ex. 1.* *Paphiopedilum* Greenteaicecreamandrasberries grex is an accepted name (Art. 21.13).

*23.4.* Notwithstanding Art. 21.17, the word “grex” or “gx” can only occur once in a grex epithet.

*23.5.* As from 1 January 2010, a grex epithet may not be established if it is identical to that of a nothospecific epithet with the same parentage.

*Note 1.* A grex and a nothospecies with the same parentage are not equivalent as the nothospecies would include backcrosses, whereas a backcrossed grex is considered a different taxon requiring a different grex epithet.

*Note 2.* The progeny of a cross between a grex and a nothospecies of the same parentage may not form a new grex. The name that should be used for the progeny of such a cross is that of the nothospecies.

*Ex. 2.* *Pleione* × *lagenaria* (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*) contains the established grexes: Confirmation grex (*P. maculata* × *P. praecox*); Liz Shan grex (Confirmation grex × *P. praecox*); Lassen Peak grex (*P. praecox* × *P. × lagenaria*) (see *Orchid review* 116(1282): 210-214 (2008)).

*Note 3.* Where established prior to 1 January 2010, a nothospecies and a grex may share the same epithet. The epithets may be distinguished typographically: in the case of nothospecies by the use of a preceding multiplication sign, use of italics and a lower case initial letter, and in the case of a grex (or grexes) the lack of a multiplication sign, no italics and an upper case initial letter.

*Ex. 3.* *Cattleya* × *claesiana* Rolf. (*C. intermedia* × *C. loddigesii*) is the same as the grex *C. Claesiana* grex.

### Recommendation 23A

*23A.1.* Notwithstanding Art. 23.2, the word “grex” or abbreviation “gx” should start with a lower case letter, following established custom.

## ARTICLE 24: NAMES OF GRAFT-CHIMAERAS

*24.1.* Graft-chimaeras are designated either by a formula or, when they are a union between two genera, by a generic name in Latin form.

*24.2.* The formula for a graft-chimaera is the accepted names of the component taxa arranged in alphabetical order linked by the addition sign “+”. A space must be left on each side of the addition sign in such formulae.

*Ex. 1.* *Crataegus* + *Mespilus*, *Cytisus purpureus* + *Laburnum anagyroides*, and *Syringa* × *chinensis* + *S. vulgaris* are formulae for graft-chimaeras.

*24.3.* When the component taxa of a graft-chimaera belong to different genera a unique name in Latin form may be formed by combining part of the name of the genus of one of the component genera connected by a vowel to the full name of the other component genus, prefixing the addition sign “+”. A space may be left between

the addition sign and the generic name. The generic name thus formed must not be the same as that of another genus or hybrid genus validly published under the provisions of the *ICBN* (see Division III).

*Ex. 2.* + *Crataegomespilus* is the name for graft-chimaeras between *Crataegus* and *Mespilus* whereas × *Crataemespilus*, published under the provisions of the *ICBN*, is the name for hybrids between *Crataegus* and *Mespilus*.

24.4. When a new generic name has been formed as provided for by Art. 24.3, the name of a graft-chimaera cultivar consists of the generic name of the graft-chimaera followed by a cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 3.* + *Laburnocytisus* ‘Adamii’ is the name for a graft-chimaera of *Cytisus purpureus* and *Laburnum anagyroides*.

*Ex. 4.* + *Crataegomespilus* ‘Dardarii’ is the name of a graft-chimaera of *Crataegus monogyna* and *Mespilus germanica* whereas × *Crataemespilus gillotii* is the name for hybrids between the two species.

24.5. When the component taxa of a graft-chimaera belong to the same genus, the name of the graft-chimaera is the name of the genus followed by a cultivar epithet.

*Ex. 5.* *Camellia* ‘Daisy Eagleson’ is a graft-chimaera having tissue from *C. sasanqua* ‘Maiden’s Blush’ in association with tissue from *C. japonica*.

24.6. Distinctive graft-chimaeras may arise from the same component taxa in which case they are treated as separate cultivars and are to be named accordingly.

*Ex. 6.* + *Crataegomespilus* ‘Dardarii’ and + *Crataegomespilus* ‘Jules d’Asnières’ are distinct cultivars of the graft-chimaera *Crataegus monogyna* + *Mespilus germanica*.

## CHAPTER VI: PUBLICATION AND ESTABLISHMENT

### ARTICLE 25: CONDITIONS OF PUBLICATION

25.1. Publication is effected under this *Code* only by distribution of printed or similarly duplicated material, including indelible autograph, (through sale, exchange, or gift) to the general public or at least to botanical, agricultural, forestry, or horticultural institutions with libraries accessible to botanists, agriculturists, foresters or horticulturists generally. It is not effected by (a) communication of new names at a public meeting, (b) the placing of names on labels in collections or gardens open to the public, (c) the issue of microform made from manuscripts, typescripts or other unpublished material, (d) publication via electronic media (but see Rec. 25B.2 and Art. 26, Note 1), or (e) by publication in confidential trade lists that are not made generally available.

*Note 1.* For the purposes of this Article, printed material is defined as a publication reproduced by any mechanical or graphical process whereby a number of identical, legible, and indelible copies are made. The issue of microform and unpublished theses is not regarded as a means of effective publication.

*Note 2.* For the purposes of this Article, indelible autograph is handwritten material reproduced by some mechanical or graphical process (such as lithography, offset, or metallic etching).

25.2. Notwithstanding Art. 22.1, Chinese, Japanese, and Korean books are considered published if, prior to 1 January 1900, they were copied by hand from a handwritten original.

25.3. Generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras are not published if, on or after 1 January 1953, they appear either in works of indelible autograph or in trade catalogues or non-scientific newspapers nor are they published if they appear in seed-exchange lists on or after 1 January 1973.

#### Recommendation 25A

25A.1. Authors should avoid publishing new names of cultivars or Groups in ephemeral printed material of any kind, in particular that which is multiplied in restricted and uncertain numbers, where the permanence of the text may be limited, where the publication in terms of numbers of copies is not obvious, or where the printed material is unlikely to reach the users described in Art. 25.1.

### **Recommendation 25B**

25B.1. It is strongly recommended that copies of publications, especially trade catalogues, containing new cultivar or Group names should be sent to appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authorities and, if possible, to libraries that maintain collections of such publications.

25B.2. Where a trade catalogue is published in electronic media, its formal publication may be effected by the printing and deposit of two copies in a designated library (see Appendix IV). While the publisher of the catalogue is strongly encouraged to print and distribute these copies, anyone else doing so must, where possible, have received the permission of the publisher first.

25B.3. In addition to Rec. 25B.2, it is recommended that single printed copies are distributed to a minimum of five libraries.

### **ARTICLE 26: DATE OF PUBLICATION**

26.1. On or after 1 January 1959 publication is deemed to be effected only if the publication containing the name of the cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of the intergeneric graft-chimaera is clearly dated at least to the year.

26.2. The date of publication is the date on which publication as defined in Art. 25.1 took place. In the absence of proof of some other date such as the date on which the publisher or his agent delivers printed material to one of the usual carriers for distribution to the public, the one appearing in the publication itself must be accepted.

*Note 1.* Where a trade catalogue is printed from an electronic medium (Rec. 25B.2), the date of publication is taken to be the date recorded by the designated library on the two copies they receive.

26.3. In cases where a dated trade catalogue or other dated publication covers more than one year or spans a period covering part of two years, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, the earlier date given is to be taken as being the date of publication.

*Ex. 1.* A trade catalogue covering the period Summer 1993 to Spring 1994 is treated as having been published in Summer 1993.

26.4. Notwithstanding Art. 26.1, if a printed trade catalogue contains no evidence of date, subsequent published research may determine the effective date of that publication.

*Ex. 2.* A number of nursery catalogues and other publications from the Daisy Hill Nursery, Ireland, were published without internal evidence of date. Some of their dates have been established by further research and are published in an appendix to: E. Charles Nelson & Alan Grills, *Daisy Hill Nursery, Newry: a history of 'the most interesting nursery probably in the world'*, Northern Ireland Heritage Gardens Committee, Belfast, 1998.

### Recommendation 26A

*26A.1.* In cases where a printed trade catalogue or other publication comprises sheets that are not permanently bound, each sheet is to be clearly dated at least to the year.

## ARTICLE 27: CONDITIONS OF ESTABLISHMENT

*27.1.* In order to be established names governed by this *Code* must (*a*) be published (Art. 25.1-25.3) on or after the starting-point date for the relevant denomination class (Art. 6.1), (*b*) appear in a dated publication (Art. 26), (*c*) have a form that complies with the provisions of Art. 21.5-21.25 for a cultivar or Art. 22.4-22.6 for a Group or Art. 23 for a grex or Art. 24.3 for the generic name of an intergeneric graft-chimaera, and (*d*) for a cultivar or Group published after 1 January 1959, be accompanied by a description or by reference to a previously published description (but see Art. 27.3-27.5).

*27.2.* For the purposes of this *Code* a description is a word or words that (*a*) indicate one or more recognizable characters of a cultivar or Group, or (*b*) distinguishes the new cultivar or Group from one whose name has been previously or is simultaneously being established.

*27.3.* The names of grexes (Art. 4.1) and the generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras (Art. 24.3) are established if the accepted names of both parents of the grex or graft-chimaera concerned are stated at the time of publication providing that the provisions of Art. 27.1 (*a*)-(*c*) are fulfilled.

*Ex. 1.* *Thrixspermum* Eric Holttum grex was established by Alex Hawkes (*Orch. Rev.* 63(742): 58. Apr. 1955) without any description (Art. 24.1(d)) but merely by stating the parentage to be *T. amplexicaule* × *T. scopa*.

*Ex. 2.* + *Crataegomespilus* was established by Simon-Louis (*Rev. Hort.* 1899: 403, 530. Sept. 1899) on stating that the component taxa were *Crataegus* and *Mespilus*.

*27.4.* Notwithstanding Art. 27.1 and Art. 27.3, the names of grexes (Art. 4.1) may be established if the full name of one parent is known, but only the generic name or nothogeneric name of the other parent is known, and is stated at the time of

publication providing that the provisions of Art. 27.1 (a)-(c) are fulfilled.

27.5. Notwithstanding Art. 27.1, the name of a cultivar is established if it is accepted under an equivalent term in a register maintained by a statutory plant registration authority.

*Note 1.* In the regulations of some statutory plant registration authorities the term “variety denomination” is used to mean “a name approved for marketing” and equates to the term “cultivar name” as defined in this *Code*.

27.6. A name that has not been accepted by the author who publishes it or one that has only been provisionally listed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority or statutory plant registration authority is not regarded as being established.

*Ex. 3.* *Erodium daucoides* ‘Pico de Fraile’ listed by the International Cultivar Registration Authority in its *Preliminary checklist of Erodium cultivar names*, issue 2: 6. 1999 is not established in this publication as it is clearly marked “status: to be confirmed” and no further information is given.

*Note 2.* Variety denominations that are proposed prior to the grant of Plant Breeders' Rights are not established. Only when such rights have been granted and the decision made public, in print or electronically, may the variety denomination be deemed to be established. The date of the name is the date of granting such rights.

*Ex. 4.* *Delphinium* ‘Princess Caroline Sunrise’ listed in the applications for Plant Breeders' Rights in The Netherlands (*Publikatieblad* 432: 3. 2003) is not established in this listing which merely indicates that an application has been received under this name. Establishment would be effected when this cultivar name is published as part of a grant of rights.

27.7. Names governed by this *Code* are not established if, at the time of publication, no plants for which the name is proposed existed.

27.8. Except as provided for by Art. 11.4 and 32.2, when two or more cultivar, Group, or grex names are simultaneously published in the same work for what the author considers to be the same cultivar, Group, or grex, only one may be established. In the absence of clear indication as to which should be the accepted name, none is established.

### **Recommendation 27A**

27A.1. The description of any new cultivar or Group should be sufficiently full to make clear how the cultivar or Group differs from similar cultivars or Groups.

**Recommendation 27B**

27B.1. Reference to a previously published description should include (a) the author's name, (b) the full title of the publication, (c) the page number on which the description appears, and (d) the year of publication.

**Recommendation 27C**

27C.1. A coloured illustration, or a reference to a previously published coloured illustration, should be provided to accompany the description of a new cultivar or Group.

**Recommendation 27D**

27D.1. When publishing a new cultivar name, the parentage and history of the cultivar, the derivation or meaning of the cultivar epithet, and the names of the raiser or breeder, nominant, and introducer should be stated when known.

27D.2. When publishing a new Group or grex name, the appropriate elements of Rec. 27D.1. should be stated where known.

**Recommendation 27E**

27E.1. When publishing a new Group name based on an epithet formed under the *ICBN* the full name under the *ICBN* should be cited.

Ex. 5. *Cucumis melo* Flexuosus Group is based on *Cucumis flexuosus* L.

**Recommendation 27F**

27F.1. If a new cultivar, Group, or grex name is established in a script other than Roman, a transliteration (Art. 33.1) or a transcription (Art. 34.1) of the epithet into Roman script using one of the standards recommended in this *Code* should be simultaneously provided.

27F.2. When establishing cultivar, Group, or grex epithets in languages using non-Roman alphabets or characters, the registrant should provide and the International Cultivar Registration Authorities should record the epithets in their original scripts, in addition to any transliterations, transcriptions, or translations in Roman script, as appropriate (see Art. 32-34).

**Recommendation 27G**

27G.1. A specimen of a new cultivar or Group, either living or dried, should be sent to the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority or to a public herbarium that maintains collections of nomenclatural standards (see Division V and Appendix III) along with any coloured photographic, illustrative, or other relevant material.



### Recommendation 27H

27H.1. The institution or organization maintaining the nomenclatural standard for the cultivar or Group should be cited when establishing the name of that cultivar or Group.

## ARTICLE 28: CITATION OF AUTHORS' NAMES

28.1. It is not necessary to cite the name of the author who has established a name governed by this *Code*.

28.2. If citation of the author of the name of a cultivar, Group, or grex is considered desirable, the name of the author may be placed following the epithet of the cultivar, Group, or grex name, in which case the name of the author attributed with establishment of the name is to be cited without regard to any original taxonomic position of that epithet.

*Ex. 1.* The citation *Larix decidua* ‘Cervicornis’ Beissner may be used even though the name was originally published as *L. europaea* var. *cervicornis* by Beissner, *Handb. Nadelholzk.* ed. 1. 328. 1891.

28.3. If a Group epithet formed in a language other than Latin is translated (Art. 32.2) or if a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is either transliterated (Art. 33.1) or transcribed (Art. 34.1) or amended as provided for in Art. 21.8-21.9 or Art. 35, the resulting name is regarded as having the same author and date (Art. 9.1) as the original name.

28.4. If a name is established by an International Cultivar Registration Authority on behalf of a registrant, the author of the name is not to be taken as that of the Registrar who publishes the name but is to be taken as being the registrant.

*Ex. 2.* *Narcissus* ‘Alnwick Beauty’ was established in the *International daffodil register and classified list (1998)*, 10th Supplement in 2007. The author of the epithet is D. C. MacArthur, cited as the registrant of the name in that publication.

28.5. The author of a cultivar name established under the regulations of a statutory plant registration authority (Art. 27.5) is to be taken as being the person or organization to whom rights are granted.

*Ex. 3.* Author citation of *Ilex* × *meserveae* ‘Blue Angel’ and *Ilex* × *meserveae* ‘Mesog’ may be written as *Ilex* × *meserveae* ‘Blue Angel’ K. K. Meserve and *Ilex* × *meserveae* ‘Mesog’ K. K. Meserve respectively, since Kathleen K. Meserve was stated as being “the inventor” of both cultivars in the documentation issued by the US Patent and Trademark Office that accompanied grant of Plant Patent to the inventor. (Patent number 3662 granted 17 December 1974 and 4878 granted 17 August 1982)

respectively.)

*Ex. 4.* The full cultivar name and author of the following apple is written *Malus domestica* ‘Star Lady’ P. Brindle as the name was established in the official journal of the New Zealand Plant Variety Rights Authority where it is stated that P. Brindle was the “owner” of those rights (*New Zealand Plant Variety Rights Journal* 86: 5. 2001).

28.6. If citation of the author of the generic name of an intergeneric graft-chimaera is considered desirable, the name of the author may be placed following the generic name.

#### **Recommendation 28A**

28A.1. If the author's name is cited after the name of a cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of an intergeneric graft chimaera, the provisions of Art. 46, 47, and 50 of the *ICBN*, including those for author abbreviations if desired, should be employed wherever practical.

**CHAPTER VII: CHOICE, RE-USE, AND REJECTION OF NAMES****ARTICLE 29: CHOICE OF NAMES**

29.1. When two or more cultivar, Group or grex names have been established using epithets in Latin form under the provisions of Art. 21.5 or Art. 22.4 and when, due to continued varied and competing use, it is uncertain which of those names best preserves existing usage, the name with the epithet based on the earliest validly published Latin epithet is to be accepted regardless of original rank.

*Ex. 1.* Under the *ICBN* the earliest available name for purple beeches at the rank of *varietas* is *Fagus sylvatica* var. *atropunicea* published by Weston in 1770 but at the rank of *forma* it is *F. sylvatica* f. *atropurpurea* published by Kirchner in 1864. Both names have been widely used. If this taxon is subsequently recognized as either a cultivar (Art. 2) or a Group (Art. 3), the name to be used is *F. sylvatica* ‘Atropunicea’ or *F. sylvatica* Atropunicea Group.

29.2. When there are two or more names in use for the same cultivar, grex, or within the same language for a Group, the name that best preserves existing usage is to be chosen as the accepted name by the appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority without regard to any rank in which those epithets might have been established (Art. 27.1) or to the principle of priority (Art. 11.1; see also Art. 11.5).

*Ex. 2.* *Erica vagans* var. *kevernensis* was validly published in 1922 under the provisions of the *ICBN* and *E. vagans* ‘Kevernensis’ has been used as a cultivar name under the provisions of Art.21.5. *E. vagans* ‘St Keverne’ was published three years later for the same cultivar and this name is now more widely used. The International Cultivar Registration Authority for heathers has chosen the later epithet to be the accepted name so as to best preserve existing usage.

29.3. When two or more cultivars, Groups, or grexes in the same denomination class have received the same or a confusingly similar epithet, the cultivar, Group, or grex whose accepted name includes that epithet is the one selected by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (but see Art. 11.5 and Art. 31.2). The name becomes so fixed by publication (Art. 25.1) of the decision and preferably by citation of a designated nomenclatural standard (see Division V).

29.4. If a hitherto recognized species or infraspecific taxon is no longer thought to represent a distinct taxon, the name of which is provided for under the *ICBN*, and if this would otherwise enforce an undesirable change of epithet for a cultivar or Group, the epithet of the name of the former taxon (*a*) may be incorporated into an existing cultivar epithet provided that the latter is also in Latin form, or (*b*) may form the

epithet of a cultivar (Art. 21.5), or (*c*) may form the epithet of the name of a Group (Art. 3.3). Such action does not involve any change in author citation (Art. 28.2).

*Ex. 3.* When *Cedrus atlantica* is, for taxonomic reasons, included as part of *C. libani* and as long as there is no value in creating *C. libani* Atlantica Group (Art. 3.3), the cultivar *C. atlantica* ‘Aurea’, originally attributed to A. H. Kent in 1900, may have its name changed to *C. libani* ‘Atlantica Aurea’ Kent to avoid confusion with *C. libani* ‘Aurea’ of A. Sénéclauze published in 1868.

*Ex. 4.* *Retinospora squarrosa* was validly published by Zuccarini in 1844 for a plant imported to Belgium from Japan by von Siebold. This plant is now considered to be a cultivar of *Chamaecyparis pisifera* and is named *C. pisifera* ‘Squarrosa’.

*Ex. 5.* If *Hosta fortunei* is no longer recognized as a species but the epithet is used to form the name of a Group (Art. 3.3), the name *H. fortunei* ‘Albopicta’ may be written as *Hosta* (Fortunei Group) ‘Albopicta’.

### Recommendation 29A

*29A.1.* The resurrection of long-forgotten or obsolete names for cultivars, Groups, or grexes that take priority over the established name currently in use for the same cultivar, Group, or grex should be avoided. If a name is found that has priority over an existing name (Art. 11.1) the provisions of Art. 19 should be applied.

*Ex. 6.* *Malus domestica* ‘Mullins's Yellow Seedling’ found as a chance seedling by A.H. Mullins was introduced in 1914 and renamed ‘Golden Delicious’ in 1916. The epithet ‘Golden Delicious’ is so well known that the name should not be changed in favour of the original epithet.

### ARTICLE 30: RE-USE OF EPITHETS

*30.1.* The epithet of a cultivar, Group, or grex must not be re-used within the same denomination class for any other cultivar, Group, or grex unless re-use of the cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is accepted by an appropriate International Cultivar Registration Authority.

*Note 1.* An epithet might also be re-used if such re-use is authorized under the regulations of a statutory registration authority.

*30.2.* An International Cultivar Registration Authority may only accept re-use of a cultivar, Group or grex epithet if that authority is satisfied that the original cultivar, Group, or grex (*a*) is no longer in cultivation, and (*b*) has ceased to exist as breeding material, and (*c*) may not be found in a gene or seed bank, and (*d*) is not a known component in the pedigree of other cultivars, Groups, or grexes, and (*e*) the name has rarely been used in publications, and (*f*) re-use is unlikely to cause confusion.

30.3. In the event that there is an objection to an epithet being accepted for re-use by an International Cultivar Registration Authority, the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants may be asked to give a definitive ruling. In such cases the Secretary of that Commission must be provided with sufficient information to enable the Commission to make its ruling.

30.4. An epithet whose re-use has been accepted by an International Cultivar Registration Authority may never be re-used subsequently in that denomination class.

30.5. If the same cultivar epithet has been applied to more than one cultivar within a denomination class (Art. 6.1) application of each name is to be made precise by appending a device such as the name of the raiser with or without the date of introduction or the date of the name (see also Art. 21.7). Appending such a device to a name does not necessarily imply that a name is regarded as accepted (Art. 11.1).

*Ex. 1.* *Tulipa* ‘Liberty’ was established by Krelage & Son before 1926, but the name was also established by P. Vooren for another cultivar in 1988. The names might be written *Tulipa* ‘Liberty’ [Krelage, pre-1926] and *Tulipa* ‘Liberty’ [Vooren, 1988] to avoid confusion.

*Ex. 2.* By adding the names of the raiser in round brackets (parentheses), *Rhododendron* ‘Madonna’ (Brooks) and *R.* ‘Madonna’ (Gable) may be distinguished.

### ARTICLE 31: REJECTION OF NAMES

31.1. Names governed by this *Code* are to be rejected and are not to be used if they are contrary to the Rules of this *Code* (but see Art. 11.4-11.7, Art. 19.1 and Art. 29.2-29.3).

31.2. Notwithstanding Art. 31.1, the name of a cultivar accepted and published by a statutory plant registration authority, even if using alternative terms (Art. 2, Note 4), must not be rejected under the provisions of this *Code*.

*Ex. 1.* Rose Ausburton was published by the United States Patent and Trademark Office under Patent Number 8838 dated July 19th, 1994 with the applicant's declaration that it was a “new and distinct variety”. Although the word cultivar does not appear in the publication of grant of patent, (Art. 2, Note 4) the cultivar name is to be taken as Rose ‘Ausburton’ and may not be rejected.

*Ex. 2.* *Chrysanthemum* ‘Dewwhite Improved’ was established under the provisions for Plant Breeders' Rights in The Netherlands, 23 January 1996 (Grant No 15798). Although the cultivar epithet is contrary to Art. 21.17 of this *Code*, the name may not be rejected.

31.3. If an established name is subsequently successfully challenged as being in

conflict with a prior right such as use of a trademark or the known name or abbreviation of an intergovernmental or international organization that is itself excluded from trademark protection by international convention, the established name is to be rejected and a replacement name provided.

*Ex. 3.* Parkway® is a trademark accepted under number 1405184 by the United States Patent and Trademark Office on 8 December 1986 as being owned by J. Frank Schmidt & Son Co. for use in marketing “cultivated deciduous trees”. Should that company or its assignees succeed in objecting to the use of “Parkway” as part of a cultivar or Group name, a replacement cultivar or Group name will have to be established.

*Ex. 4.* Glendoick Gardens Ltd was registered as the “proprietor” of Glendoick® by the Patent Office, UK on 19 February 1999 for use in “agricultural, horticultural, and forestry products; seeds; natural plants, and flowers; propagation material for plants; fresh fruits, and vegetables”. Any cultivar, Group or grex name established since that date and employing the word “Glendoick” may be challenged and may have to be rejected.

*Ex. 5.* Cultivar names containing the words “United Nations”, and “World Bank”, or the acronyms “UNESCO” or “WIPO” may have to be rejected since they represent names of organizations whose names are themselves excluded from trademark protection pursuant to Art. 6 ter (1)(b) of the Paris Convention.

**31.4.** A cultivar, Group, or grex name is to be rejected if its publication is against the expressed wish of its raiser or breeder.

*Ex. 6.* *Coprosma* ‘The Shiner’ was originally published with the epithet ‘Shiner’ against the wishes of its raiser who had distributed the plant with his preferred name. The raiser's preferred name was established by L.J. Metcalf in *The cultivation of New Zealand trees and shrubs* ed. 3, 96. 1987.

*Ex. 7.* × *Coryhopea* Butler's Balzac grex was established for the artificial cross *Coryanthes macrantha* × *Stanhopea wardii*. Following an objection to the name from the original hybridizer of the grex, that name was rejected in favour of the hybridizer's choice, × *Coryhopea* Off the Wall grex (see *Orch. Rev. Suppl.* 110: 110. 2002).

**31.5.** Where, under the provisions of earlier editions of this *Code*, a name has been rejected and a replacement name has been provided, the rejected name may not now be accepted under the provisions of this *Code*.

*Ex. 8.* *Erica cinerea* ‘Lily’ was rejected by the International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Erica* because it contravened Art. 17.13 of the 1995 edition of this *Code*. *E. cinerea* ‘Lily Evelyn’ was published as a replacement name (see: *International register of heather names* 1(3): 42. 2000) and this later name may not now be displaced in favour of the rejected name for reasons of priority (Art. 11.1) under the present Art. 21.22.

*Ex. 9.* In 1976 the Shibamichi Kanjiro Co., Angyo, Japan, introduced a *Styrax* under the name “Benibana Ego-no-ki” which might be considered to be a cultivar name. The word “benibana” means

“red-flowered” in English and “ego-no-ki” is the Romanized writing of the Japanese common name for *Styrax japonica*. Under Art. 17.11 of the 1995 edition of this *Code* the word “benibana” on its own could not form a cultivar epithet. *Styrax japonica* ‘Pink Chimes’ had been established as a replacement name for this cultivar (*Arnoldia* 43(4): 17, 1983) and this later name is not to be displaced by *S. japonica* ‘Benibana’ for reasons of priority.

31.6. A cultivar name whose epithet is in a language other than Latin and that exactly duplicates another in the denomination class to which it is assigned is to be rejected. A replacement name may be established unless the provisions of Art. 30 (re-use of names) are applied (but see Art. 31.2).

31.7. A replacement name that is superfluous on its establishment is to be rejected.

*Ex. 10.* In 1942, Harlan Kelsey and William Dayton (*Standardized plant names*, ed. 2: 507) proposed the name *Quercus robur* ‘Golden’ to replace the well established name *Q. robur* ‘Concordia’ Kirchn. (1864). The later name is superfluous and is to be rejected.

31.8. If it is thought that a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet might cause undue offence, an application may be made to the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants to rule on whether that epithet is to be rejected.

*Note 1.* The basis for any proposal for rejection must be provided for the Secretary of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants at the time of application. This must include reference to any publications that support the application, with copies wherever possible. The decision of the Commission shall be published; rejection becomes effective from the date of publication of the Commission's ruling.

**CHAPTER VIII: TRANSLATION, TRANSLITERATION, AND TRANSCRIPTION****ARTICLE 32: TRANSLATION OF EPITHETS**

32.1. When a cultivar or grex name appears in a publication using a different language from that of its original publication, the epithet may not be translated (it may however be transliterated (Art. 33) or transcribed (Art. 34)).

*Ex. 1.* The cultivar epithet for the kohlrabi *Brassica oleracea* 'Nichtschiessender' may not be translated.

*Ex. 2.* A cultivar name with the epithet 'Owen Glendower' (a legendary person from Welsh history) may not have its epithet altered to 'Owain Glyndwr', even though the latter is the preferred spelling in the Welsh language.

*Note 1.* Notwithstanding Art. 32.1, when for marketing reasons a cultivar or grex epithet has been translated into a different language, the translated epithet is to be regarded as a trade designation (Art. 13.1).

*Ex. 3.* For marketing purposes, *Hibiscus syriacus* 'L'Oiseau Bleu' might have *H. syriacus* BLUE BIRD as a trade designation in which case the name could be styled *H. syriacus* BLUE BIRD ('L'Oiseau Bleu'); *Clematis* BLUE ANGEL ('Blekityn Aniol'), and *Cucumis sativus* NOA'S FORCING ('Noas Treib') are to be considered trade designations since they have been translated from their original language.

32.2. When established in a language other than Latin, the epithet of the name of a Group may be translated. Only one such equivalent epithet may exist in each modern language.

*Ex. 4.* *F. sylvatica* Purple-leaved Group (in English) may be translated as *F. sylvatica* Groupe à Feuilles Pourpres (in French), *F. sylvatica* Purpurblätterige Gruppe (in German), and *F. sylvatica* Gruppo con Foglie Purpuree (in Italian).

*Ex. 5.* *Brassica oleracea* Brussels Sprout Group (in English) may be translated as *B. oleracea* Groupe du Chou de Bruxelles (in French) and *B. oleracea* Rosenkohl Gruppe (in German).

*Note 2.* If a Group epithet is in Latin form (Art. 3.3), it may not be translated. However, an alternative Group epithet in a language other than Latin may be established under Art. 11.4.

**Recommendation 32A**

32A.1. When publishing a new Group name which is adopted from an existing Group name in another modern language (Art. 32.2) it is strongly recommended that a reference is given to the publication where the original name was used.



*Ex. 6.* *Cucurbita* Kabocha-Gruppen (in Swedish) was adopted from *C. Kabocha* Group with reference to Hanelt, *Mansfeld's encyclopedia of agricultural and horticultural crops* (2001).

### ARTICLE 33: TRANSLITERATION OF EPITHETS

33.1. If a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet in one alphabetic script needs to be rendered in another alphabetic script, it may be transliterated character by character (see also Rec. 27F).

*Note 1.* Reverse transliterations may lead to inconsistencies.

#### Recommendation 33A

33A.1. For transliteration to or from different alphabetic scripts one of which employs the Roman alphabet, it is recommended that one of the following standards should be used: (a) the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables* published by the United States Library of Congress, or (b) the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) transliteration standards. Within any one publication the system of transliteration used should be the same.

*Note 2.* The 1997 edition of the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables*<sup>1</sup> contains 54 Romanization schemes covering more than 150 languages written in various non-Roman scripts.

*Note 3.* The ISO has over 17,000 International Standards<sup>2</sup> on a variety of subjects; those on transliteration fall under the International Classification for Standards, “ICS 01.140.10: Writing and transliteration”.

*Ex. 1.* When transliterated into a Roman script using the *ALA-LC Romanization Tables*, the Russian epithets (in Cyrillic script) ‘Белоснежка’ and ‘Голубое Веретено’ become ‘Belosnezhka’ and ‘Goluboe Vereteno’ respectively.

*Ex. 2.* When transliterated into a Roman script using ISO 9: 1995, the Russian epithets (in Cyrillic script) ‘Белоснежка’ and ‘Голубое Веретено’ become ‘Belosnezhka’ and ‘Goluboe Vereteno’ respectively.

---

<sup>1</sup> The *American Library Association - Library of Congress Romanization Tables* may be electronically downloaded from <http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpsr/roman.html>

<sup>2</sup> The ISO International Standards can be searched for transliteration standards online: [http://www.iso.org/iso/iso\\_catalogue.htm](http://www.iso.org/iso/iso_catalogue.htm)

**ARTICLE 34: TRANSCRIPTION OF EPITHETS**

34.1. If a cultivar, Group or grex epithet in a non-alphabetic script needs to be rendered in an alphabetic script it may be transcribed (see also Rec. 27F).

*Note 1.* Reverse transcription may lead to inconsistencies.

**Recommendation 34A**

34A.1. It is recommended that within any one publication the systems of transcription used are used consistently.

**Recommendation 34B**

34B.1. Transcription of Chinese characters (Hanzi) into a script employing the Roman alphabet should be by the Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an ("Hanyu Pinyin" or "Pinyin" for short) system of Romanization, but the tone marks may be omitted for simplicity.

*Ex. 1.* The epithets in the names ‘雪海宫粉’ 梅, ‘艳红照水’ 梅, and ‘早玉蝶’ 梅 are transcribed as ‘Xuehai Gongfen’ (meaning “snow sea palace pink”), ‘Yanhong Zhaoshui’ (“brilliant red reflected in water”), and ‘Zao Yudie’ (“early jade butterfly”) respectively, the character 梅 in each name being transcribed as “mei”, the Chinese for *Prunus mume* (see: *Annual report of international mei* (Prunus mume) register (2000)).

**Recommendation 34C**

34C.1. Transcription of Korean characters (Hangeul) into a script employing the Roman alphabet should be by the system of Romanization contained in Proclamation 2000-8 of the Ministry of Culture and Tourism, Republic of Korea.

*Ex. 2.* Using this system of Romanization, the epithets ‘한겨레’, ‘한보라’, and ‘한소미’ in Hangeul for *Hibiscus syriacus* cultivars would transcribe as ‘Hangyeore’, ‘Hanbora’, and ‘Hansomi’ respectively.

*Ex. 3.* When spoken in Korean, the epithet ‘댄싱스완’ for a *Lycoris* cultivar sounds like “dancing swan”. When transcribed into Roman script using the recommended standard, the name is *Lycoris* ‘Daensingswan’ (see *Korean Journ. Hort. Sci. Techn.* 21. suppl. 1: 99. 2003).

**Recommendation 34D**

34D.1. Transcription of Japanese characters (Kanji, Hiragana, and Katakana) into a script employing the Roman alphabet (Romaji) should be by the modified Hepburn system of Romanization as employed in Kenkyusha's New Japanese-English Dictionary (edition 3 and later).

Ex. 4. The epithet ‘天の川’ partly in Kanji, ‘あまのがわ’ in Hiragana, and ‘アマノガワ’ in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar would each transcribe as ‘Ama-no-gawa’; the epithet ‘にいがたのゆき’ in Hiragana for the *Hepatica* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Niigata-no-yuki’; the epithet ‘こくりゅうにしき’ in Hiragana for the *Paeonia* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Kokuryū-nishiki’; the epithet ‘たきにおい’ in Hiragana for the *Prunus* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Taki-nioi’; the epithet ‘とうげん’ in Hiragana for the *Tricyrtis* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Tōgen’.

Ex. 5. The epithet ‘おうごんせとうち’ in Hiragana or ‘オウゴンセトウチ’ in Katakana for the *Hosta* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’; the epithet ‘おなみせかい’ in Hiragana for the *Neofinetia* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Ō-nami-sekai’; the epithet ‘ちょうしゅうひざくら’ in Hiragana or ‘チョウシユウヒザクラ’ in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Chōshū-hizakura’; the epithet ‘こじょうのまい’ in Hiragana or ‘コジヨウノマイ’ in Katakana for the *Prunus* cultivar would transcribe as ‘Kojō-no-mai’.

34D.2. If a diacritical mark is used to indicate when a vowel is to be pronounced long in Romanized epithets transcribed from Kanji, Hiragana, or Katakana, then the macron (overscore) is to be used and not the circumflex or any other diacritical mark.

Ex. 6. The epithet of *Prunus* ‘Chōshū-hizakura’ is not to be written as ‘Chōshû-hizakura’.

## CHAPTER IX: SPELLING (ORTHOGRAPHY)

### ARTICLE 35: SPELLING OF EPITHETS

35.1. The correct spelling of epithets in Latin form that were originally published under the provisions of the *ICBN* but that are subsequently used as cultivar, Group or grex epithets (Art. 21.5 of this *Code*) is to be determined in accordance with the provisions of Art. 60 of the *ICBN*.

35.2. The correct spelling (orthography) of an epithet in a language other than Latin is that as provided on its establishment (Art. 27.1). For cultivar, Group, or grex epithets originally in languages using non-Roman alphabets or characters, the original scripts are the basis for correcting any spelling mistakes or other orthographical irregularities in transliterations, transcriptions or translations (see also Art. 32, Art. 33 and Art. 34).

*Ex. 1.* The epithet in the Chinese cultivar name *Prunus mume* ‘红艳宫粉’ was transcribed as ‘Hong’yan Gongfen’, where the apostrophe is superfluous; the epithet in Roman script is to be corrected to ‘Hongyan Gongfen’, taking the original script in Chinese characters as the basis (see: *Annual report of international mei (Prunus mume) register (2000)*).

35.3. Notwithstanding Art. 35.2, an unintentional mistake in the original spelling (orthography) of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet is to be corrected.

*Ex. 2.* *Rhododendron* ‘Sherbrook’, registered with the International Cultivar Registration Authority for *Rhododendron* in 1983, was corrected by that authority to *R.* ‘Sherbrooke’ upon realization that the name of the place after which the cultivar was named has the latter spelling.

*Ex. 3.* *Philadelphus* ‘Deberoux’ was corrected to *P.* ‘Debureaux’ on realization that the cultivar was named after Monsieur Gérard Debureaux (see *The sport* 29: 11. 2002).

*Ex. 4.* *Argyranthemum* ‘Qinta White’ must not be changed to ‘Quinta White’ as the original spelling of the epithet was deliberate; the epithet of *Calluna vulgaris* ‘Redgauntlet’ must not be divided into two words as the use of a single word was intentional; *Pinus sylvestris* ‘Hexguld’ was deliberately so published and is not to be altered to *P. sylvestris* ‘Häxguld’ even though the derivation of the epithet was stated at the time of publication as being from the Swedish word for “witches' gold”.

35.4. Accents and other diacritical marks are to be retained in cultivar, Group, and grex epithets, except as provided for under Art. 35.5 and Rec. 34B.

35.5. The diaeresis indicating that a vowel is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel may be omitted.

Ex. 5. The cultivar epithets ‘Chloë’ and ‘Zoë’ may be written as ‘Chloe’ and ‘Zoe’.

35.6. Accents and other diacritical marks apart from the diaeresis may be added in epithets if it is thought that demands of linguistic custom are better served when they are added.

Ex. 6. The names *Aster amellus* ‘Veilchenkoenigin’ and *Phlox paniculata* ‘Kirchenfuerst’, that were originally published without diacritical marks, in these cases umlauts, may be written *Aster amellus* ‘Veilchenkönigin’ and *Phlox paniculata* ‘Kirchenfürst’ respectively.

Ex. 7. The cultivar epithet of *Syringa* × *hyacinthiflora* ‘La Canada’ was changed to ‘La Cañada’ on realization that the cultivar was named after a place named La Cañada (now City of La Cañada Flintridge), California, USA.

35.7. The ligatures “æ” and “œ” indicating that the letters are pronounced together are to be transcribed as the separate letters “ae” and “oe” respectively.

35.8. The German letter “ß” in an epithet may be transcribed as “ss”; the ampersand “&” is to be transcribed as “and” or its equivalent in other languages according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place; the symbol # when meaning “number” in an epithet is either to be written with the contraction “No” or the equivalent abbreviation in other languages or to be spelled in full according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place.

35.9. Cultivar, Group, and grex epithets or parts of such epithets must not be abbreviated (except as provided under Art. 14.2 and Art. 16.1). An exception is allowed for such epithets that include words and forms of address normally abbreviated in accordance with linguistic custom. The use of such abbreviations is optional and if desired the abbreviated word may be spelled in full according to the language used in the publication where establishment took place; the two variants are treated as equivalent epithets.

Ex. 8. *Astrantia major* ‘Sunningdale Variegated’ established by G.S. Thomas in *The modern florilegium* ed. 3: 11. 1966 must not be abbreviated to *A. major* ‘Sunningdale Var.’.

Ex. 9. *Nerium* ‘Professeur Durand’ and *Cedrus* ‘Mount Saint Catherine’ may be written as *Nerium* Prof. Durand’ and *Cedrus* ‘Mt St Catherine’ respectively; when the epithets in *Clematis* ‘Ed. André’ and *Nymphaea* ‘Dr Florence’ are written in full they must be as *Clematis* ‘Edouard André’ and *Nymphaea* ‘Docteur Florence’ respectively since the language of the publication in which both names were established was French.

35.10. Notwithstanding Art. 35.9, a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet originally established using the initials of personal names must not have those initials spelled out in full.

*Ex. 10.* *Crocus chrysanthus* ‘E.A. Bowles’ may not be changed to *C. chrysanthus* ‘Edward Augustus Bowles’; the epithet ‘M. Charles Coëz’ may not be expanded unless under Art. 35.9 the “M.” means Monsieur as is the case in a *Dianthus* cultivar in which case the equivalent epithet ‘Monsieur Charles Coëz’ may be used; *Picea pungens* ‘J. James’ is not to be altered to *P. pungens* ‘Jesse James’ even though the epithet is known to commemorate a famous person from American history.

35.11. Hyphenated cultivar, Group, and grex epithets in words other than Latin may not be changed to single words or separate words unless correcting a grammatical error or an error in original spelling (Art. 35.3).

*Ex. 11.* *Narcissus* ‘Commander-in-Chief’ may not be changed to *N.* ‘Commander in Chief’.

35.12. Unless linguistic custom demands otherwise, the second and subsequent elements of a hyphenated word are to start with a lower case letter.

*Ex. 12.* *Achimenes* ‘Show-off’; *Alonsoa warszewiczii* ‘Peachy-keen’; *Crocus chrysanthus* ‘Eye-catcher’; *Galanthus* ‘Celia Blakeway-Phillips’; *Pelargonium* ‘Chi-Chi’ (a famous panda); *Erica* × *williamsii* ‘Cow-y-Jack’ (a place in Cornwall, England); *Fuchsia* ‘Shangri-La’; *Hedera helix* ‘Baden-Baden’; *Nymphaea* ‘Gloire du Temple-sur-Lot’; *Narcissus* ‘Commander-in-Chief’; *Rhododendron* ‘Tri-Lights’ (a member of *R.* Northern Lights Group).

*Ex. 13.* *Carex* ‘Yodo-no-yuki’ (the epithet meaning “the snows of Yodo”); *Prunus* ‘Beni-chidori’ (the epithet meaning “crimson plover”); *Saxifraga fortunei* ‘Akane-Fuji’ (the epithet meaning “rose madder Mount Fuji”).

35.13. For purposes of consistency, unless linguistic custom demands otherwise, when a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet contains a possessive noun in the singular, the apostrophe together with the letter “s” is to be written after the noun. When the epithet contains a possessive noun in the plural, the apostrophe is to be written after the plural noun.

*Ex. 14.* ‘Anne's Gold’ (named after a person called Anne); ‘Mrs Parris's Gold’ (named after Mrs Parris); ‘Nelsons' Garden’ (named after the garden of Mr and Mrs Nelson); ‘Richards' Blue’ (named after Mr and Mrs Richards).

*Ex. 15.* Following traditional German linguistic custom ‘Kramers Rote’ (named after a person called Kramer) does not take an apostrophe but ‘Klaus' Weisse’ (after a person called Klaus) does.

35.14. An apparent erroneous use of an apostrophe or hyphen in a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet may only be corrected after examination of the derivation of the words concerned.

*Ex. 16.* *Hosta* ‘Shelley's’ and *Osteospermum* ‘Hopley's’ are to be corrected to *H.* ‘Shelleys’ and *O.* ‘Hopleys’ respectively since neither is named after people; *Monarda* ‘Marshalls Delight’ is to be corrected to *M.* ‘Marshall's Delight’ upon realization that the cultivar was named in honour of

Henry H. Marshall, plant breeder in Canada (*HortScience* 24(3): 525. 1989).

*Ex. 17.* *Rhododendron* ‘Terra-Cotta’ was corrected to *R.* ‘Terracotta’ as it has been determined that the cultivar was named after the colour of its flowers and not after the proper name Terra-Cotta.

*Ex. 18.* *Polypodium vulgare* ‘Bifido-cristatum’ is to be corrected to *P. vulgare* ‘Bifidocristatum’.

### **Recommendation 35A**

*35A.1.* The liberty of correcting the spelling of a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet should be used with reserve, especially if the change affects the first syllable and above all the first letter of such an epithet.

### **Recommendation 35B**

*35B.1.* It is recommended that for purposes of consistency, when a cultivar, Group, or grex epithet contains a word that is an abbreviation, the period (full-stop) is added after the abbreviation unless that abbreviation is an acronym (a pronounceable word derived from initial letters of a name), an initialism (a word derived from initial letters of a name each one of which is spoken individually), a blend (a novel word derived from combining parts of other words), or a contraction of a word in which cases the period should not be applied.

*Ex. 19.* In English the word “Professor” when abbreviated is written Prof., whereas the words “Doctor”, “Mister”, and “Saint” when abbreviated are written Dr, Mr, and St respectively, their abbreviations being contractions.

*Ex. 20.* ‘G. K. Chesterton’; ‘Mrs M. L. Bland’; ‘MCC’ (an initialism representing Marylebone Cricket Club and not a Roman numeral); ‘USS Enterprise’ (where USS is an initialism representing “United Star Ship”); ‘Pride of NASA’ (where NASA is an acronym for National Aeronautical and Space Agency); ‘City Smog’ and ‘Brunch Time’ (where smog and brunch are blends).

### DIVISION III: NAMES OF HYBRID GENERA

1. The formation of names for hybrids between plants of different genera is governed by the provisions of the *ICBN*. These provisions are summarized here for ease of reference but the text of the current edition of the *ICBN* is to be taken as definitive.

2. Hybridity is indicated by use of the multiplication sign “×”, either between the names of the taxa involved (a “hybrid formula”) or by assigning a name prefixed by the multiplication sign (for hybrid genera, a “condensed formula”<sup>1</sup>) (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.6.1).

*Note 1.* Hybridity may also be indicated by the use of the prefix “notho” with the indication of rank (see *ICBN*, Art. H.1.1).

*Ex. 1.* *Ascocentrum* × *Rhynchostylis* × *Vanda* is a hybrid formula; × *Vascostylis* is the condensed formula for that hybrid formula.

3. In the case of a condensed formula, the *ICBN* recommends (*ICBN*, Rec. H.3A) that the multiplication sign should be placed so as to indicate that it belongs with the name or epithet but is not actually part of it. The exact amount of space, if any, between the multiplication sign and the initial letter of the name or epithet should depend on what best serves readability. If the mathematical symbol is not available, it should be approximated by a lower-case letter “x” (not italicized). The multiplication sign “×” in a hybrid formula is always placed between, and separate from, the names of the parents (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.1.1 & H.3.1 + H.3A).

4. The name for a hybrid genus arising from a cross between members of two genera is a condensed formula in which the names adopted for the parental genera are combined into a single word, using the first part or the whole of one, the last part or the whole of the other (but not the whole of both) and, optionally, a connecting vowel (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.6.2).

*Ex. 2.* × *Agropogon* (= *Agrostis* × *Polypogon*); × *Gymnanacamptis* (= *Anacamptis* × *Gymnadenia*); × *Alpingera* (= *Alpinia* × *Etilingera*); × *Seleniphyllyum* (= *Epiphyllum* × *Selenicereus*); × *Rhaphiobotrya* (= *Rhaphiolepis* × *Eriobotrya*).

---

<sup>1</sup>Names given to hybrids between species or between infra-specific taxa are not condensed formulae but must conform with all the provisions of the *ICBN* for names of the equivalent rank.



Ex. 3.  $\times$  *Amarcrinum* is correct for *Amaryllis*  $\times$  *Crinum*, not “ $\times$  *Crindonna*”. The latter condensed formula was proposed for the same hybrid genus, but was formed from the generic name adopted for one parent (*Crinum*) and a synonym (*Belladonna*) of the generic name adopted for the other (*Amaryllis*); being contrary to *ICBN* Art. 32.1(b), it is not validly published.

Ex. 4. The name  $\times$  *Leucadenia* is correct for *Leucorchis*  $\times$  *Gymnadenia*, but if the generic name *Pseudorchis* is adopted instead of *Leucorchis*,  $\times$  *Pseudadenia* is correct.

5. The name for a hybrid genus derived from four or more genera is formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *-ara*. No such name may exceed eight syllables. Such a name is regarded as a condensed formula (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.6.3).

Ex. 5.  $\times$  *Beallara* (= *Brassia*  $\times$  *Cochlioda*  $\times$  *Miltonia*  $\times$  *Odontoglossum*);  $\times$  *Brilliandeara* (*Aspasia*  $\times$  *Brassia*  $\times$  *Cochlioda*  $\times$  *Miltonia*  $\times$  *Odontoglossum*  $\times$  *Oncidium*).

6. The name for a hybrid genus derived from three genera is either (a) a condensed formula in which the three names adopted for the parental genera are combined into a single word not exceeding eight syllables, using the whole or first part of one, followed by the whole or any part of another, followed by the whole or last part of the third (but not the whole of all three) and, optionally, one or two connecting vowels, or (b) a name formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *-ara* provided that the resulting name does not exceed eight syllables (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.6.4).

Ex. 6.  $\times$  *Sophrolaeliocattleya* (= *Cattleya*  $\times$  *Laelia*  $\times$  *Sophronitis*);  $\times$  *Vascostylis* (= *Ascocentrum*  $\times$  *Rhynchostylis*  $\times$  *Vanda*);  $\times$  *Rodrettiopsis* (= *Comparettia*  $\times$  *Ionopsis*  $\times$  *Rodriguezia*);  $\times$  *Devereuxara* (= *Ascocentrum*  $\times$  *Phalaenopsis*  $\times$  *Vanda*);  $\times$  *Wilsonara* (= *Cochlioda*  $\times$  *Odontoglossum*  $\times$  *Oncidium*).

7. The *ICBN* recommends that when a hybrid generic name is formed from the name of a person by adding the termination *-ara*, that person should preferably be a collector, grower or student of the group (cf. *ICBN*, Rec. H.6A.1.).

8. When a condensed formula is derived from names of genera, the parental names used in its formation must be those that are accepted by the author of the condensed formula as correct for the parental taxa (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.8.1).

Ex. 7. If the genus *Triticum* is interpreted on taxonomic grounds as including *Triticum* (in the strict sense) and *Agropyron*, and the genus *Hordeum* as including *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) and *Elymus*, then hybrids between *Agropyron* and *Elymus* as well as between *Triticum* (in the strict sense) and *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) are placed in the same hybrid genus,  $\times$  *Tritordeum*. If, however, *Agropyron* is separated generically from *Triticum*, hybrids between *Agropyron* and *Hordeum* (in either the strict sense or the wider sense) are placed in the hybrid genus  $\times$  *Agrohordeum*. Similarly, if *Elymus* is separated generically from *Hordeum*, hybrids between *Elymus* and *Triticum* (in either the strict sense or the wider sense) are placed in the hybrid genus  $\times$  *Elymotriticum*. If both *Agropyron* and

*Elymus* are given generic rank, hybrids between them are placed in the hybrid genus  $\times$  *Agroelymus*;  $\times$  *Tritordeum* is then restricted to hybrids between *Hordeum* (in the strict sense) and *Triticum* (in the strict sense), and hybrids between *Elymus* and *Hordeum* are placed in  $\times$  *Elyhordeum*.

9. Names of hybrid genera ending in *-ara*, which are equivalent to condensed formulae, are applicable only to plants which are accepted taxonomically as being derived from the parents named (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.8.2).

*Ex. 8.* If *Euanthe* is recognized as a distinct genus, hybrids simultaneously involving its only species, *E. sanderiana*, and the three genera *Arachnis*, *Renanthera*, and *Vanda* must be placed in  $\times$  *Cogniauxara* (= *Arachnis*  $\times$  *Euanthe*  $\times$  *Renanthera*  $\times$  *Vanda*). If, on the other hand, *E. sanderiana* is included in *Vanda*, the same hybrids are placed in  $\times$  *Holttumara* (= *Arachnis*  $\times$  *Renanthera*  $\times$  *Vanda*).

10. In order to be validly published (established) the name of a hybrid genus must be effectively published (*ICBN*, Art. 29-31) with a statement of the names of the parent genera, but no description or diagnosis is necessary, whether in Latin or in any other language (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.9.1).

*Ex. 9.* Validly published names:  $\times$  *Philageria*, published by Maxwell Masters in 1872 with a statement of parentage, *Lapageria*  $\times$  *Philesia*;  $\times$  *Agrohordeum*, published by Aimée Camus in 1927 (= *Agropyron*  $\times$  *Hordeum*).

11. Since the names of hybrid genera are condensed formulae or are treated as such, they do not have nomenclatural types and their application is determined entirely on stated parentage (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.9, Note 1).

12. For purposes of priority, names of hybrid genera are subject to the same Rules as are those of non-hybrid genera (cf. *ICBN*, Art. 11.8).

*Ex. 10.* The name  $\times$  *Triticosecale* (1899) antedates  $\times$  *Triticale* (1936) for the hybrids between *Secale* and *Triticum*.

13. Names of hybrid genera that appear on or after 1 January 1953 in trade catalogues or non-scientific newspapers and on or after 1 January 1973 in seed-exchange lists are not validly published (established) in those publications (cf. *ICBN*, Art. 30.3).

14. Names published merely in anticipation of the existence of a hybrid genus are not validly published (established) under *ICBN* Art. 34.1(b) (cf. *ICBN*, Art. H.9, Note 2).

## DIVISION IV: REGISTRATION OF NAMES

1. For the purposes of this *Code*, registration is the acceptance of a cultivar, Group, or grex name by an authority responsible for registering such names.
2. An International Cultivar Registration Authority is an organization appointed by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration to be charged with the registration of cultivar, Group, or grex names as provided for by this *Code*. The act of registration is completed by publication of such names which also ensures their establishment where necessary (see Appendix I for a list of International Cultivar Registration Authorities).
3. A statutory plant registration authority is an organization established by national legal enactment or by international treaty, which, as part of its remit, establishes variety denominations or other names for plants (see Appendix II for a list of such statutory authorities). Names established by statutory plant registration authorities must be cited in the relevant register and checklist.
4. An International Cultivar Registration Authority is not obliged to register a name accepted by a statutory registration authority if that name contravenes an article of this *Code*. However the name may not be rejected (see Art. 31.2).
5. Acceptance of a cultivar or Group name by an International Cultivar Registration Authority does not imply judgement on the distinctness of that particular cultivar or Group, nor on its agricultural, horticultural or silvicultural merit.
6. An International Cultivar Registration Authority may also record trademarks if they have been used as marketing devices for cultivars, Groups, or grexes. Such marks if recorded must never be given nomenclatural status and must not appear in a publication by an International Cultivar Registration Authority in such a way that they may be confused with names or epithets.
7. The registrar is the person appointed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority to carry out the duties of registration.
8. The registrant is the person or organization submitting a name to an International Cultivar Registration Authority for registration.

## DIVISION V: NOMENCLATURAL STANDARDS

1. A nomenclatural standard is preferably a herbarium specimen to which the name of a cultivar or Group is permanently attached.

*Note 1.* Names of taxa governed by the *ICBN* are fixed by the application of a nomenclatural type, designation of which has been part of the requirements for valid publication (establishment) since 1958 (*ICBN*, Art. 37). A nomenclatural type is designated so that there is, within the range of variation of the taxonomic unit, a precise reference point to which the name is permanently attached.

*Note 2.* Many cultivars, including clones, may have variable characteristics within their circumscription and any reference to a nomenclatural standard in determining the identity of a plant must be made with this knowledge in mind.

*Note 3.* Grex names have no nomenclatural standard as they are defined solely on a statement of parentage.

2. A nomenclatural standard may have been originally nominated as a voucher specimen or as the type specimen under the provisions of the *ICBN*.

*Ex. 1.* When P. C. de Jong first described *Betula utilis* ‘Doorenbos’ (*Dendroflora* 23: 26. 1986) he indicated the herbarium specimen *De Jong 1205* conserved at Utrecht University Herbarium as a voucher specimen and this may be regarded as the nomenclatural standard.

*Ex. 2.* *Cotoneaster* × *watereri* (Exell in *Gard. chron.* 83: 44. 1928) is based on the nomenclatural type at the Natural History Museum, London. If *C. × watereri* is considered as a cultivar, the type specimen may be taken as the nomenclatural standard.

3. An image, other than one maintained digitally, may be designated as a nomenclatural standard when a specimen is not made available or when essential characteristics are best recognized from a suitable illustration.

*Ex. 3.* The particular flower colours of certain *Dianthus* and *Narcissus* cultivars and those of orchids might be better observed in paintings or photographic images rather than in dried herbarium specimens.

*Ex. 4.* A representative colour print (WSY0103774) provided by the registrant was designated the nomenclatural standard for *Delphinium* ‘Cranberry Delight’ by the Registrar as no herbarium material was available.

*Note 4.* Conditions of use under copyright should be established upon deposition of an image to be used as a nomenclatural standard or contained within a standard portfolio.

Ideally an image should be without restrictions of use. Any conditions of copyright should not limit the purpose for which the image is deposited (see Principle 9).

*Note 5.* An image printed from a digital file may be used as a nomenclatural standard, but the digital file should be retained with a reference in the standard portfolio (Division V.10).

*Note 6.* An illustration in a published journal may be cited as a nomenclatural standard when appropriate.

*Note 7.* If a specimen later becomes available that can be shown to be from the same stock as the image, this may be placed in the standard portfolio (Division V.10).

4. If a nomenclatural type cannot be interpreted unambiguously, a nomenclatural standard may be designated in support of that type provided that designation of the nomenclatural type will always take precedence over the nomenclatural standard.

*Ex. 5.* The nomenclatural standard for *Dracaena fragrans* ‘Massangeana’ was designated as *Hetterscheid HDR21* (conserved at Herbarium Vadense, Wageningen, The Netherlands) by J. J. Bos *et al.* (*Edinb. Journ. Bot.* 49(3): 329. 1993) even though the nomenclatural type for *Dracaena massangeana* hort. ex Rodigas was lectotypified in the same paper as being the plate opposite page 170, *Rev. Hort. Belge.* 8: 169. 1882.

5. The nomenclatural standard for a clonal cultivar whose name is established under the provisions of a statutory plant registration authority after 1 January 2004 must be prepared from the same stock as that used to support recognition of that cultivar by the statutory plant registration authority.

6. The nomenclatural standard for a seed-raised cultivar whose epithet is established under the provisions of a statutory plant registration authority after 1 January 2004 must be prepared from plants grown from seed deposited in and maintained by seed laboratories nominated for maintaining such germplasm under prevailing statutory provisions.

*Note 8.* Germplasm of a seed-raised cultivar that is maintained by such laboratories will over a period of time show slight variation and any reference to a nomenclatural standard in determining the identity of a plant must be made with this knowledge in mind.

7. Designation of a nomenclatural standard and the citation of the institution holding such a standard is effected by publication (Art. 25).

*Ex. 6.* The nomenclatural standard for *Rhododendron* ‘Maurice Daffarn’ was designated as the specimen held at the Royal Horticultural Society's Wisley Herbarium; this became the nomenclatural standard on publication of that designation in *The new plantsman* 8(2): 126. 2001.

8. In the event that more than one nomenclatural standard has been designated for the same cultivar or Group, the earliest designation takes precedence.

9. A nomenclatural standard that is a dried specimen should be recognized by keeping it in a specially marked folder.

10. Where practical, nomenclatural standards should be maintained as part of a portfolio into which any specimens, illustrations, colour chart references, and other information such as a copy of the original publication of a name may be assembled for reference purposes. Where appropriate, the standard portfolio should also include details of parentage and the origins of the cultivar or Group and should cite the date and place of establishment of the name.

*Note 9.* The precise edition of any colour chart used should be specified since there is often variation from one edition to another.

11. Duplicates of nomenclatural standards should be circulated to other institutions with collections of such standards, especially those in other countries.

12. The exact location of any living material from which a nomenclatural standard was prepared, and the date of its collection, should be noted with such a standard.

13. If the breeder or raiser of the cultivar or Group, its nominant, introducer, or author of its name is no longer available or willing to examine material for preparation of a nomenclatural standard, the advice of other experts should be sought in verifying material for such a standard.

14. Herbarium specimens require expert preparation and raisers of new cultivars or Groups are strongly advised to donate plant material to a recognized herbarium willing to accept such material so that suitable nomenclatural standards may be prepared.

**DIVISION VI: MODIFICATION OF THIS *CODE***

This *Code* may only be modified by action of the IUBS (International Union of Biological Sciences) International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants. In the event of this Commission no longer being extant, an alternative body shall be appointed by IUBS.

## APPENDIX I

### DIRECTORY OF INTERNATIONAL CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITIES (ICRAs)

This listing is derived from the data to be found on the webpages of the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS) that are devoted to ICRAs:

<http://www.ishs.org/icra/index.htm>

Regularly revised information, including details of electronic and paper publications, on each of the ICRAs currently appointed, along with current details of any regional representatives, may be found throughout those pages. In addition, an alphabetical search for current ICRAs may also be made by genus.

Any prospective ICRA is advised to study this *Code* as well as the information found in the ICRA webpages before contacting the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration, the body that appoints ICRAs. The Commission may be contacted through its Chairman, Dr Janet J Cubey, The Royal Horticultural Society's Garden, Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK (email: [janetcubey@rhs.org.uk](mailto:janetcubey@rhs.org.uk)).

#### **AFRICAN VIOLET SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC. (A.V.S.A.)**

<http://www.avsa.org>

ICRA: *Saintpaulia* H. Wendl. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Joseph J. Bruns, 1220      Fax: (+1) 810 314 6932  
Stratford Lane, Hanover Park, Illinois      Email: [jbruns@qwip.net](mailto:jbruns@qwip.net)  
60103, USA

#### **AMERICAN BEGONIA SOCIETY**

<http://www.begonias.org>

ICRA: *Begonia* L. (1958)

Registrar: Mr Gene Salisbury, PO      Email: [geneann@sbcglobal.net](mailto:geneann@sbcglobal.net)  
Box 452, Tonkawa, Oklahoma 74653,  
USA



**AMERICAN BOXWOOD SOCIETY (ABS)**

<http://www.boxwoodsociety.org>

ICRA: *Buxus* L. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Lynn R. Batdorf, U.S.  
National Arboretum, 3501 New York  
Avenue NE, Washington, DC 20002-  
1958, USA

Fax: (+1) 202 245 45 75  
Email: [batdorfl@ars.usda.gov](mailto:batdorfl@ars.usda.gov)

**AMERICAN BRUGMANSIA & DATURA SOCIETY, INC. (ABADS)**

<http://www.abads.net>

ICRA: *Brugmansia* Pers.; *Datura* L.(2002)

Registrar: Tom Hulse, 7602 80th Ave  
NE, Marysville, WA 98270, USA

Email: [registrar@abads.org](mailto:registrar@abads.org)  
Registration page: <http://www.abads.net/Registry>

**AMERICAN FUCHSIA SOCIETY**

<http://www.americanfuchsiasociety.org>

ICRA: *Fuchsia* L. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Edward M. Salome,  
6979 Clark Road, Paradise, California  
95969-2210, USA

Email: [ejsalome@aol.com](mailto:ejsalome@aol.com)  
Registration page:  
<http://www.americanfuchsiasociety.org/registra.html>

**AMERICAN HEMEROCALLIS SOCIETY**

<http://www.daylilies.org>

ICRA: *Hemerocallis* L. (1955)

Registrar: Ms Gretchen J. Baxter, PO  
Box 9887, Greensboro, NC 27429,  
USA

Fax: (+1) 919 569 2174  
Email: [registrar@daylilies.org](mailto:registrar@daylilies.org)  
Registration page: <http://www.daylilies.org/AHSregister.html>

**AMERICAN HOSTA SOCIETY**

<http://www.hosta.org>

ICRA: *Hosta* Tratt. (1966)

Registrar: Mr Kevin P. Walek, 9122  
John Way, Fairfax Station, VA  
22039-3042, USA

Email: [AHSRegistrar@aol.com](mailto:AHSRegistrar@aol.com)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.hosta.org/About\\_Hosta/registered\\_hosta.htm](http://www.hosta.org/About_Hosta/registered_hosta.htm)

**AMERICAN IRIS SOCIETY**

<http://www.irises.org>

ICRA: *Iris* L., excluding bulbous species (1955)

Registrar: Anne and Mike Lowe,  
12219 Zilles Road, Blackstone,  
Virginia 23824-9394, USA

Email: [mlowe@worldiris.com](mailto:mlowe@worldiris.com)  
Registration page: <http://www.irises.org/registration.htm>

**AMERICAN IVY SOCIETY (A.I.S.)**

<http://www.ivy.org>

ICRA: *Hedera* L. (1976)

Registrar: Mr Russell A. Windle, PO  
Box 461, Lionville, Pennsylvania  
19353, USA

Email: [hedera@worldnet.att.net](mailto:hedera@worldnet.att.net)

**AMERICAN PENSTEMON SOCIETY**

ICRA: *Penstemon* Schmidel (1966?)

Registrar: Dr Dale T. Lindgren,  
University of Nebraska-Lincoln, West  
Central Research and Extension  
Center, 461 West University Drive,  
North Platte, Nebraska 69101-7756,  
USA

Fax: (+1) 308 532 3823  
Email: [dlindgre@unlnotes.unl.edu](mailto:dlindgre@unlnotes.unl.edu)

**AMERICAN PEONY SOCIETY**

<http://www.americanpeonysociety.org>

ICRA: *Paeonia* L. (1974)

Registrar: Mr Reiner Jakubowski, 624  
Pineridge Road, Waterloo, Ontario,  
N2L 5J9 Canada

Email: [nameregistration@americanpeonysociety.org](mailto:nameregistration@americanpeonysociety.org)

**AMERICAN PUBLIC GARDENS ASSOCIATION (FORMERLY AABGA)**

<http://www.publicgardens.org>

ICRA: **Woody plant genera**, excluding those genera or other groups for which other ICRAs have been appointed. A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Dr Gerry Moore, Brooklyn  
Botanic Garden, 1000 Washington  
Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11225-  
1099, USA

Fax: (+1) 718 941 4774  
Email: [gerry Moore@bbg.org](mailto:gerry Moore@bbg.org)  
Registration page:  
<http://www.bbg.org/sci/taxonomy/registration.html>

**AMERICAN ROSE SOCIETY (A.R.S.)**

<http://www.ars.org>

ICRA: *Rosa* L. (1955)

Registrar: Mr Jeffrey Ware, American Rose Society, PO Box 30000, Shreveport, Louisiana 71130-0030, USA  
Fax: (+1) 318 938 5405  
Email: [execdirector@ars-hq.org](mailto:execdirector@ars-hq.org)  
Registration page via: <http://64.78.40.53/irar/newregis.asp>

**AMERICAN VIOLET SOCIETY (AVS)**

<http://americanvioletsociety.org>

ICRA: *Viola* L. (2001)

Registrar: Mr Thomas E. Silvers, PO Box 1405, Frederick, Maryland 21702, USA  
Registration page: [http://americanvioletsociety.org/Registry/Cultivar\\_Registry\\_New\\_Entries.htm](http://americanvioletsociety.org/Registry/Cultivar_Registry_New_Entries.htm)

**ARBORETUM KALMTHOUT FOUNDATION**

<http://www.hamamelis.be>

ICRA: *Hamamelis* L. (2003)

Registrar: Ir. Abraham Rammeloo, Heuvel 2, B- 2920 Kalmthout Belgium  
Fax: (+32) 3 666 33 96  
Email: [rammeloo@arboretumkalmthout.be](mailto:rammeloo@arboretumkalmthout.be)

**AUSTRALIAN CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITY (ACRA)**

<http://www.anbg.gov.au/acra/index.html>

ICRA: **Australian plant genera**, excluding those genera or groups for which other ICRAs have been appointed (1958); *Acacia* Mill. – all species (1958). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Ms Nola Sloan, Australian National Botanic Gardens, GPO Box 1777, Canberra, ACT 2601, Australia  
Email: [acra@anbg.gov.au](mailto:acra@anbg.gov.au)

**AUSTRALIAN HIBISCUS SOCIETY, INC.**

<http://www.australianhibiscus.com>

ICRA: *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* L. and its hybrids (1980)

Registrar: Mr Brian Cheers, 62 Oregon Drive, Shailer Park 4128, Brisbane, Queensland, Australia  
Email: [brianchears@optusnet.com.au](mailto:brianchears@optusnet.com.au)  
Registration page: <http://www.australianhibiscus.com/Nomenclature/nomenclature.htm>

**BLAHNIK, ING. ZDENEK**

ICRA: *Lonicera* L. (2002)

Registrar: Ing. Zdenek Blahnik,                      Fax: (+42) 0 32363 1489  
Jungmannova 5, 25101 Ricany, Czech      Email: iil@post.cz  
Republic

**BRITISH AND EUROPEAN GERANIUM SOCIETY (BEGS)**

<http://www.begs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Pelargonium* L'Hér. (2003)

Registrar: Mrs Mary Spink,                      Email: maryspink7@gmail.com  
Homestead, Beech Hill Road,  
Swanland, Hull, East Yorks, HU14  
3QY, UK

**BROMELIAD SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL (BSI)**

<http://www.bsi.org>

ICRA: *Bromeliaceae* Juss. (1980). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Mr Geoff Lawn, 31                      Email: cultivars@bsi.org  
Greenock Ave, Como WA 6152,              Registration page:  
Australia    [http://www.bsi.org/brom\\_info/cultivar/instructions.html](http://www.bsi.org/brom_info/cultivar/instructions.html)

**CHINESE MEI FLOWER AND WINTER-SWEET ASSOCIATION**

ICRA: *Prunus mume* Siebold & Zucc. (1998) and its hybrids

Registrar: Prof. Chen Junyu, PO Box              Fax: (+86) 10 62338935  
123, Beijing Forestry University,              Email: chenjymc@public.bta.net.cn  
Beijing 100083, People's Republic of  
China

**CLIVIA SOCIETY**

<http://www.cliviasociety.org/>

ICRA: *Clivia* Lindl. (2000)

Registrar: Mr Kenneth R. Smith, 593              Email: cliviasmith@idx.com.au  
Hawkesbury Road, Winmalee, New              Registration page:  
South Wales 2777, Australia                      <http://cliviasmith.idx.com.au/csocregrs.htm>

**CONNECTICUT AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION (CAES)**

<http://www.ct.gov/caes>

ICRA: *Castanea* Mill. (1998)

Registrar: Dr Sandra L. Anagnostakis, Connecticut Agricultural Experiment Station, Box 1106, New Haven, Connecticut 06504-1106, USA	Fax: (+1) 203 974 8502 Email: <a href="mailto:sandra.anagnostakis@po.state.ct.us">sandra.anagnostakis@po.state.ct.us</a> Registration page: <a href="http://www.ct.gov/caes/cwp/view.asp?a=2815&amp;q=376864">http://www.ct.gov/caes/cwp/view.asp?a=2815&amp;q=376864</a>
--	--

**CYCLAMEN SOCIETY**

<http://www.cyclamen.org>

ICRA: *Cyclamen* L., excluding *C. persicum* Mill. (1999)

Registrar: Mr Trevor D. Wiltshire, Pencarn, Gonvena, Wadebridge, Cornwall PL27 6DL, UK	Email: <a href="mailto:registrar@cyclamen.org">registrar@cyclamen.org</a> Registration page: <a href="http://www.cyclamen.org/registrar_set.html">http://www.cyclamen.org/registrar_set.html</a>
--	--

**EASTER, MRS MARGARET (PROVISIONAL APPOINTMENT)**

<http://www.thymus.co.uk>

ICRA: *Thymus* L. (2008)

Registrar: Mrs Margaret Easter, 23 Wroxham Way, Harpenden, Hertfordshire AL5 4PP, UK	Email: <a href="mailto:mail@thymus.co.uk">mail@thymus.co.uk</a>
--	---

**EPIPHYLLUM SOCIETY OF AMERICA (ESA)**

<http://www.epiphyllumsociety.org/index.html>

ICRA: *Cactaceae* Juss. Tribe *Hylocereeae* F. Buxbaum (1958). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Dr Richard W. Kohlschreiber, 1801 West 27th Street, San Pedro, California 90732-4601, USA	Email: <a href="mailto:kohlpedro@cox.net">kohlpedro@cox.net</a>
---	---

**EUROPEAN KALMIA SOCIETY (PROVISIONAL APPOINTMENT)**

<http://www.kalmia-society.org>

ICRA: *Kalmia* L. (2008)

Registrar: Ms Julia Westhoff, c/o Stadtgruen Bremen, Friedhofstr. 51, D-28213 Bremen, Germany	Fax: (+49) 421 496 6236 Email: <a href="mailto:registrar@kalmia-society.org">registrar@kalmia-society.org</a> Registration page: <a href="http://www.kalmia-society.org/registrar.php">http://www.kalmia-society.org/registrar.php</a>
---	---

**GERANIACEAE GROUP OF THE BRITISH PELARGONIUM AND GERANIUM SOCIETY**

<http://www.bpgs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Erodium* Aiton; *Geranium* L. (1997)

Registrar: Mr David X. Victor, The Old Stables, Church Lane, Hockliffe, Leighton Buzzard, Bedfordshire LU7 9NL, UK  
Fax: (+44) 1525 210070  
Email: [davidxvictor@btinternet.com](mailto:davidxvictor@btinternet.com)

**GESNERIAD SOCIETY, INC.**

<http://www.gesneriadsociety.org>

ICRA: *Gesneriaceae* Rich. & Juss., excluding *Saintpaulia* H. Wendl. (1958)

Registrar: Ms Judy Becker, 432 Undermountain Road, Route 41, Salisbury, Connecticut 06068-1102, USA  
Registration page: [http://www.gesneriadsociety.org/ir\\_ges/index.htm](http://www.gesneriadsociety.org/ir_ges/index.htm)

**HARDWOOD TREE IMPROVEMENT AND REGENERATION CENTER (HTIRC)**

<http://www.agriculture.purdue.edu/fnr/HTIRC/index.htm>

ICRA: *Juglans* L. (2001)

Registrar: Dr Keith Woeste, Department of Forestry and Natural Resources, Purdue University, Pfendler Hall, 715 West State Street, West Lafayette, Indiana 47907-2061 USA  
Fax: (+1) 765 494 9461  
Email: [woeste@purdue.edu](mailto:woeste@purdue.edu)  
Registration page: <http://www.agriculture.purdue.edu/fnr/HTIRC/Juglans.htm>

**HEATHER SOCIETY**

<http://www.heathersociety.org.uk>

ICRA: *Andromeda* L. (1970); *Calluna* Salisb. (1970); *Daboecia* D. Don (1970); *Erica* L., including *Bruckenthalia* Rchb. (1970)

Registrar: Dr E. Charles Nelson, Tippitiwitchet Cottage, Hall Road, Outwell, Wisbech, Cambridgeshire PE14 8PE, UK  
Fax: (+44) 1945 774077  
Email: [admin@heathersociety.org.uk](mailto:admin@heathersociety.org.uk)  
Registration page: <http://www.heathersociety.org.uk/registration.html>

**HELICONIA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL**

[http://www.heliconiasocietypr.org/cultivar\\_registration.htm](http://www.heliconiasocietypr.org/cultivar_registration.htm)

ICRA: *Heliconia* L. (2003)

Registrar: Dr Brian R. Brunner, Dept of Horticulture Agricultural Experimental Station, HC-01 Box 11656, Lajas, Puerto Rico 00667, Puerto Rico  
Fax: (+1) 787 899 1265  
Email: brbrunner@yahoo.com

**HOLLY SOCIETY OF AMERICA**

<http://www.hollysocam.org>

ICRA: *Ilex* L. (1955)

Registrar: Mr Michael R. Pontti, 10520 Cedar Avenue, Fairfax, Virginia 22030, USA  
Fax: (+1) 202 687 9127  
Email: ponttim@georgetown.edu

**HORTRESEARCH (NEW ZEALAND)**

<http://www.hort.cri.nz>

ICRA: *Actinidia* Lindl. (1993)

Registrar: Dr A. Ross Ferguson, HortResearch Mt Albert, 120 Mt Albert Road, Private Bag 92 169, Mt Albert, Auckland, New Zealand  
Fax: (+64) 9 815 4201  
Email: rferguson@hortresearch.co.nz

**INDIAN AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE (IARI) – BOUGAINVILLEA**

<http://www.iari.res.in>

ICRA: *Bougainvillea* Comm. ex Juss. (1966)

Registrar: Dr M. L. Choudhary, Division of Floriculture and Landscaping, Indian Agricultural Research Institute (IARI), Pusa Campus, New Delhi 110 012, India  
Fax: (+91) 11 576 6420

**INDIAN AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE (IARI) – MANGO**

<http://www.iari.res.in>

ICRA: *Mangifera indica* L. (mango) (1970)

Registrar: Dr Anand K. Singh, Division of Fruits & Horticulture Technology, IARI, Pusa Campus, New Delhi 110 012, India  
Email: aksingh36@yahoo.com

### **INSTITUT NATIONAL D'HORTICULTURE (INH)**

ICRA: *Hydrangea* L. (2001)

Registrar: Mme H el ene Bertrand,                      Fax: (+33) 2 4173 1557  
Institut National d'Horticulture, 2 rue                      Email: helene.bertrand@inh.fr  
Le N tre, 49 045 Angers Cedex 01  
France

### **INTERNATIONAL AROID SOCIETY (IAS)**

<http://www.aroid.org>

ICRA: *Araceae* Adans., excluding *Calla* L. & *Zantedeschia* Spreng. (?1980). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at  
<http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Dr Derek Burch,                      Email: derek@horticulturist.com  
International Aroid Society (I.A.S.),  
PO Box 566, Woodstock, Vermont  
05091, USA

### **INTERNATIONAL CAMELLIA SOCIETY**

<http://camellia-ics.org>

ICRA: *Camellia* L. (1962)

Registrar: Mr Neville Haydon, 4/6                      Fax: (+64) 9 296 1893  
Ingram Street, Papakura, New Zealand                      Email: nevhaydon@xtra.co.nz

### **INTERNATIONAL CARNIVOROUS PLANT SOCIETY (I.C.P.S.)**

<http://www.carnivorousplants.org>

ICRA: *Byblidaceae* Domin; *Cephalotaceae* Dumort.; *Dioncophyllaceae* Airy Shaw; *Droseraceae* Salisb.; *Drosophyllaceae* Chrtak, Slavikov a & Studnicka; *Lentibulariaceae* Rich.; *Martyniaceae* Stapf; *Nepenthaceae* Dumort.; *Roridulaceae* Engl. & Gilg; *Sarraceniaceae* Dumort. (1998). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at  
<http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Dr Jan Schlauer,                      Email: jan@carnivorousplants.org  
International Registrar, ICPS, Inc.,                      Registration page: <http://www.carnivorousplants.org/cultivars/cultivarsmain.html>  
PMB 322, 1564A Fitzgerald Drive,  
Pinole, California 94564-2229, USA



**INTERNATIONAL CULTIVAR REGISTRATION CENTER FOR OSMANTHUS (ICRCO)**

[http://icrco.njfu.edu.cn/englishweb/e\\_index.htm](http://icrco.njfu.edu.cn/englishweb/e_index.htm)

ICRA: *Osmanthus* Lour. (2005)

Registrar: Prof. Xiang Qibai (C.B. Shang), Nanjing Forestry University,  
Lonpan Road 159, Nanjing 210037,  
Jiangsu Province, People's Republic of  
China

Fax: (+86) 25 854 27093  
Email: [xiangqb@njfu.com.cn](mailto:xiangqb@njfu.com.cn)

**INTERNATIONAL OAK SOCIETY (IOS)**

<http://www.internationaloaksociety.org>

ICRA: *Quercus* L. (1998)

Registrar: Mr Piers Trehane, 2 Pye  
Corner, Wimborne, Dorset  
BH21 1UL, UK

Email: [piers.trehane@gmail.com](mailto:piers.trehane@gmail.com)  
Registration page:  
<http://www.internationaloaksociety.org/cultivar-registration>

**INTERNATIONAL ORNAMENTAL CRABAPPLE SOCIETY (IOCS)**

ICRA: *Malus* Mill., excluding *M. domestica* Borkh. (2000)

Registrar: Prof. James Chatfield, Ohio  
State University Extension, North  
District Office, 1680 Madison  
Avenue, Wooster, Ohio 44691-4096  
USA

Fax: (+1) 330 263 3667  
Email: [chatfield.1@osu.edu](mailto:chatfield.1@osu.edu)

**INTERNATIONAL POPLAR COMMISSION OF F. A. O.**

<http://www.fao.org>

ICRA: *Populus* L., forestry cultivars (1955)

Registrar: Dr Stefano Bisoffi, CRA –  
Consiglio per la ricerca e la  
sperimentazione in agricoltura, Via  
Nazionale 82, Roma 00184, Italy

Fax: (+39) 06 47836505  
Email: [stefano.bisoffi@entecra.it](mailto:stefano.bisoffi@entecra.it)  
Registration page via: <http://www.fao.org/forestry/index.jsp>

**INTERNATIONAL WATERLILY AND WATER GARDENING SOCIETY (IWGS) –  
NELUMBO**

<http://www.iwgs.org>

ICRA: *Nelumbo* Adans. (1988)

Registrar: Prof. Ken Tilt, Professor  
and Extension Horticulturist, 101  
Funchess Hall, Auburn University,  
Auburn, Alabama 36849, USA

Fax: (+1) 334 844 3131  
Email: [kentilt@gmail.com](mailto:kentilt@gmail.com)  
Registration Page: [http://www.ag.auburn.edu/hort/  
landscape/AU\\_Lotus\\_Project\\_Page.html](http://www.ag.auburn.edu/hort/landscape/AU_Lotus_Project_Page.html)

**INTERNATIONAL WATERLILY AND WATER GARDENING SOCIETY (IWGS) –  
NYMPHAEACEAE**

<http://www.iwgs.org>

ICRA: *Nymphaeaceae* Salisb. (1988)

Registrar: Mr Jim Purcell & Ms  
Verena Liechti, Oregon Aquatics,  
90760 N. Prairie Road, Eugene, OR  
97402, USA

Fax: (+1) 541-689-3980  
Email: [jim@oregonaquatics.com](mailto:jim@oregonaquatics.com)  
Registration page: [http://collections2.eeb.uconn.edu/  
collections/herbarium/reghome.html](http://collections2.eeb.uconn.edu/collections/herbarium/reghome.html)

**LAKELAND HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY**

<http://www.holehirdgardens.org.uk>

ICRA: *Astilbe* Buch.-Ham. ex D. Don (1998)

Registrar: Mr Henry Noblett, Lakeland  
Horticultural Society, Holehird,  
Patterdale Road, Windermere,  
Cumbria LA23 1NP, UK

Fax: (+44) 1768 863588  
Email: [h.noblett1@btinternet.com](mailto:h.noblett1@btinternet.com)

**MAGNOLIA SOCIETY, INC.**

<http://www.magnoliasociety.org>

ICRA: *Magnoliaceae* Juss. (?1962). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Mr Tim M. Boland, The  
Polly Hill Arboretum, PO Box 561,  
West Tisbury, Massachusetts 02575,  
USA

Fax: (+1) 508 693 5772  
Email: [tim@pollyhillarboretum.org](mailto:tim@pollyhillarboretum.org)  
Registration page via: <http://www.magnoliasociety.org>

**MECONOPSIS GROUP**

<http://www.meconopsis.org>

ICRA: *Meconopsis* Vig. (2002)

Registrar: Dr Evelyn Stevens, The  
Linns, Sheriffmuir, Dunblane,  
Perthshire FK15 0LP, UK

Fax: (+44) 1786 822295  
Email: [evelyn@thelinns.org.uk](mailto:evelyn@thelinns.org.uk)

**MORTON ARBORETUM**

ICRA: *Ulmus* L.

Registrar: Dr Andrew L. Hipp, The  
Morton Arboretum, 4100 Illinois  
Route 53, Lisle, Illinois 60532-1293,  
USA

**NATIONAL ARBORETUM WESTONBIRT**

ICRA: *Acer* L.

Registrar: Mr Peter A. Gregory, The  
National Arboretum, Westonbirt,  
Tetbury, Gloucs GL8 8QS, UK

Fax: (+44) 1666 880 559  
Email: [pgregory@phonecoop.coop](mailto:pgregory@phonecoop.coop)

**NERINE AND AMARYLLID SOCIETY**

ICRA: *Nerine* Herb. (2003)

Registrar: Mr Barrie Ward,  
Ellerbrook, Stoneacre Drive,  
Adlington, Chorley, Lancashire PR6  
9SR, UK

Fax: (+44) 1257 480072  
Email: [barrieward@aol.com](mailto:barrieward@aol.com)

**NORTH AMERICAN GLADIOLUS COUNCIL**

<http://www.gladworld.org>

ICRA: *Gladiolus* L., excluding species and early flowering cultivars (1958)

Registrar: Mr William J. Owen, 675  
MacElroy Road, Ballston Lake, NY  
12019-2201, USA

Email: [smgfowen@nycap.rr.com](mailto:smgfowen@nycap.rr.com)

**PASSIFLORA SOCIETY INTERNATIONAL**

<http://www.passiflora.org>

ICRA: *Passiflora* L. (2000)

Registrar: Dr Les A. King, 27 Ivar  
Gardens, Basingstoke, Hampshire  
RG24 8YD, UK

Email: [les@king.myzen.co.uk](mailto:les@king.myzen.co.uk)  
Registration page: <http://www.passionflow.co.uk/reg.htm>

**PLANT GENE RESOURCES OF CANADA**

ICRA: *Amelanchier* Medik. (1980)

Registrar: Dr Richard St-Pierre, Plant  
Gene Resources of Canada,  
Agriculture and AgriFood Canada,  
Saskatoon Research Centre,  
Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, Canada  
S7N 0X2

Fax: (+1) 306 956 7246  
Email: [stpierrerg@agr.gc.ca](mailto:stpierrerg@agr.gc.ca)

**PLUMERIA SOCIETY OF AMERICA, INC.**

<http://www.theplumeriasociety.org>

ICRA: *Plumeria* L. (1980)

Registrar: Mr Eulas Stafford, The  
Plumeria Society of America, Inc., PO  
Box 22791, Houston, Texas 77227-  
2791, USA

Email: [estafford@pdq.net](mailto:estafford@pdq.net)  
Registration page:  
<http://www.theplumeriasociety.org/dyncat.cfm?catid=2000>

**PROTEACEAE CULTIVAR REGISTRATION AUTHORITY, NATIONAL DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE (SOUTH AFRICA)**

<http://www.nda.agric.za>

ICRA: *Proteaceae* Juss., excluding genera endemic to the Australian region. A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Mrs Joan Sadie, Proteaceae  
Cultivar Registration Authority,  
Private Bag X5044, Stellenbosch  
7599, Republic of South Africa

Fax: (+27) 21 887 2264  
Email: [joans@nda.agric.za](mailto:joans@nda.agric.za)  
Registration page: [http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/Protea2002/proteaceae\\_register.htm](http://www.nda.agric.za/docs/Protea2002/proteaceae_register.htm)

**ROYAL BOTANICAL GARDENS (CANADA)**

<http://www.rbg.ca>

ICRA: *Syringa* L. (1958)

Registrar: Mr Freek Vrugtman, Royal Botanical Gardens, Box 399, Hamilton, Ontario, Canada L8N 3H8  
 Email: [lilacreg@rbg.ca](mailto:lilacreg@rbg.ca)  
 Registration page: [http://www.rbg.ca/pages\\_sci\\_conserv/sci\\_conserv\\_registrar.html](http://www.rbg.ca/pages_sci_conserv/sci_conserv_registrar.html)

**ROYAL GENERAL BULBGROWERS' ASSOCIATION (KAVB)**

<http://www.kavb.nl>

ICRA: **Bulbous, cormous and tuberous-rooted ornamental plants**, excluding *Dahlia* Cav., *Lilium* L., *Narcissus* L., *Nerine* Herb. and various Australian genera (1955). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Drs Johan van Scheepen, Royal General Bulbgrowers' Association, Postbus 175, NL-2180 AD Hillegom, The Netherlands  
 Fax: (+31) 252 536951  
 Email: [vanscheepen@kavb.nl](mailto:vanscheepen@kavb.nl)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – CLEMATIS**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Clematis* L., including *Atragene* L. (1986)

Registrar: Mr Duncan Donald, 16 Midtown of Inverasdale, Poolewe, Achnasheen, Wester Ross, IV22 2LW, UK  
 Email: [clematis@rhs.org.uk](mailto:clematis@rhs.org.uk)  
 Registration page: [http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_clematis.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_clematis.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – CONIFERS**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: **Conifers**, including *Ginkgo* L. (1964). A full listing of the genera for which this ICRA registers cultivars may be found at <http://www.ishs.org/sci/icralist/icralist.htm>

Registrar: Mr Lawrence Springate, c/o Conifer Registration, Botany Dept, Royal Horticultural Society's Garden, Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK  
 Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
 Email: [conifer@rhs.org.uk](mailto:conifer@rhs.org.uk)  
 Registration page: [http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_conifers.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_conifers.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DAHLIA**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Dahlia* Cav. (1966)

Registrar: Ms Sharon McDonald,  
Royal Horticultural Society Garden,  
Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB,  
UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
Email: [dahlia@rhs.org.uk](mailto:dahlia@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_dahlia.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_dahlia.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DELPHINIUM**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Delphinium* L., perennials only (1955)

Registrar: Dr Janet Cubey, Royal  
Horticultural Society Garden, Wisley,  
Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
Email: [delphinium@rhs.org.uk](mailto:delphinium@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_delphinium.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_delphinium.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – DIANTHUS**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Dianthus* L. (1958)

Registrar: Dr Alan C. Leslie, 109 York  
Street, Cambridge, CB1 2PZ, UK

Email: [alanleslie@rhs.org.uk](mailto:alanleslie@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_dianthus.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_dianthus.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – LILIUM**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Lilium* L. (1958)

Registrar: Mrs Kate Donald, 16  
Midtown of Inverasdale, Poolewe,  
Achnasheen, Ross-shire, IV22 2LW,  
UK

Email: [lily@rhs.org.uk](mailto:lily@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_lilium.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_lilium.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – NARCISSUS**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Narcissus* L., including *Corbularia* Salisb. ex Herb. (1955)

Registrar: Ms Sharon McDonald,  
Royal Horticultural Society Garden,  
Wisley, Woking, Surrey GU23 6QB,  
UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
Email: [daffodil@rhs.org.uk](mailto:daffodil@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_narcissus.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_narcissus.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – ORCHIDS**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Orchidaceae* Adans. (1972). NOTE: Registration is only for orchid greges (grexes) at present, the one exception currently being *Pleione* D. Don., for which cultivar registration is now open on a trial basis. For further information, contact the Registrar.

Registrar: Mr Julian M. H. Shaw, 2  
Albert Street, Stapleford, Nottingham  
NG9 8DB, UK

Fax: (+44) 115 939 2828  
Email: [orcreg@rhs.org.uk](mailto:orcreg@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_orchids.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_orchids.asp)

**ROYAL HORTICULTURAL SOCIETY (RHS) – RHODODENDRON**

<http://www.rhs.org.uk>

ICRA: *Rhododendron* L., including *Azalea* L. (1958)

Registrar: Dr Alan C. Leslie, 109 York  
Street, Cambridge, CB1 2PZ, UK

Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
Email: [alanleslie@rhs.org.uk](mailto:alanleslie@rhs.org.uk)  
Registration page:  
[http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration\\_rhododendron.asp](http://www.rhs.org.uk/plants/registration_rhododendron.asp)

**ROYAL NEW ZEALAND INSTITUTE OF HORTICULTURE, INC.**

<http://www.rnzih.org.nz>

ICRA: *Coprosma* J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (1970); *Hebe* Comm. ex Juss (1958); *Leptospermum* J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (1958); *Phormium* J. R. Forst. & G. Forst. (?1970); *Pittosporum* Banks ex Sol. (?1974)

Registrar: Mr Lawrence J. Metcalf,  
Greenwood, 179 Westdale Road,  
R.D.1, Richmond 7081, New Zealand

Fax: (+64) 3 540 2295  
Email: [landlmetcalf@xnet.co.nz](mailto:landlmetcalf@xnet.co.nz)  
Registration page: <http://www.hebesoc.org>

**SAXIFRAGE SOCIETY**

<http://www.saxifraga.org>

ICRA: *Saxifraga* L. (1994)

Registrar: Mrs Beryl M. Bland,  
Inglewood, Inglewhite Road,  
Goosnargh, Preston, Lancashire, PR3  
2ED, UK

Email: [registrar@saxifraga.org](mailto:registrar@saxifraga.org)

**SINGAPORE BOTANIC GARDENS**

<http://curcuma.sbg.org.sg>

ICRA: *Curcuma* L. (2000)

Registrar: Dr Chin See Chung,  
Singapore Botanic Gardens, Cluny  
Road, Singapore 259569

Fax: (+65) 6467 4832  
Email: [chin\\_see\\_chung@nparks.gov.sg](mailto:chin_see_chung@nparks.gov.sg)

**UNITED STATES NATIONAL ARBORETUM**

<http://www.usna.usda.gov>

ICRA: *Lagerstroemia* L. (1970)

Registrar: Dr Margaret Pooler,  
USDA/ARE U.S. Arboretum, 3501  
New York Avenue, NE Washington,  
DC 20002-1958, USA

Fax: (+1) 202 245 4579  
Email: [margaret.pooler@ars.usda.gov](mailto:margaret.pooler@ars.usda.gov)



## APPENDIX II

### DIRECTORY OF STATUTORY PLANT REGISTRATION AUTHORITIES

For the latest details, users are referred to the webpages of the International Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants (Union Internationale pour la Protection des Obtentions Végétales; UPOV) at:

<http://www.upov.int>

#### ALBANIA

National Seeds and Seedlings Institute  
Ministry of Agriculture, Food and Protection  
of Consumer  
Rr. Siri Kodra  
Tirana

Tel: (355 4) 230 324  
Fax: (355 4) 230 324  
E-mail: [petrittopi@yahoo.com](mailto:petrittopi@yahoo.com)  
[fetahelezi@yahoo.com](mailto:fetahelezi@yahoo.com)  
Website: [www.eshff.gov.al](http://www.eshff.gov.al)

#### ARGENTINA

Instituto Nacional de Semillas (INASE)  
Secretaría de Agrícola, Ganadería y Pesca  
Ministerio de Economía y Obras y Servicios  
Públicos  
Avda. Paseo Colón 922 – 3. Piso, Of. No. 347  
1063 Ciudad de Buenos Aires

Tel: (54 11) 4349 2497  
Fax: (54 11) 4349 2417  
E-mail: [inase@sagyp.mecon.ar](mailto:inase@sagyp.mecon.ar)  
Website: <http://www.inase.gov.ar>

#### AUSTRALIA

The Registrar  
Plant Breeder's Rights  
IP Australia  
P.O. Box 200  
Woden, A.C.T. 2606

Tel: (61-2) 6283 2999  
Fax: (61-2) 6283 7999  
E-mail: [pbr@ipaaustralia.gov.au](mailto:pbr@ipaaustralia.gov.au)  
Website:  
<http://www.ipaustralia.gov.au/pbr/index.shtml>

#### AUSTRIA

Bundesamt für Ernährungssicherheit  
Institut für Sortenwesen  
Postfach 400  
Spargelfeldstrasse 191  
A-1226 Wien

Tel: (43-1) 732 16 40 00  
Fax: (43-1) 732 16 42 11  
E-mail: [sortenwesen@ages.at](mailto:sortenwesen@ages.at)  
Website: <http://www.ages.at>

**AZERBAIJAN**

State Commission on the Test and Protection of  
Selection Novelty  
Necef Narimanov st., 7A  
1006 Baku

Tel/Fax: (994-12) 462 5420  
E-mail: yguliyev@agroagency.gov.az

**BELARUS**

Committee for the State Testing and Protection of  
Plant Varieties of the Republic of Belarus  
90, Kazintza str.  
Minsk 220108

Tel: (375-17) 277 0421 / 277 7051  
Fax: (375-17) 278 3530  
E-mail: sortr@mshp.minsk.by

**BELGIUM**

Service public fédéral économie, P.M.E.  
Classes moyenne & energie  
Office de la Propriété Intellectuelle  
North Gate III – 5ème étage  
16, Blvd du Roi Albert II  
B-1000 Bruxelles

Tel: (32-2) 277 8275  
Fax: (32-2) 277 5262  
E-mail: camille.vanslebrouck@  
economie.fgov.be  
Website: [http://economie.fgov.be/  
opri-die.htm](http://economie.fgov.be/opri-die.htm)

**BOLIVIA**

Dirección Nacional de Semillas  
Secretaría Nacional de Agricultura y Ganadería  
Avda. 6 de Agosto 2006, Edif. V. Centenario  
Casilla 4793  
La Paz

Tel: (591-2) 441 153 / 441 608  
Fax: (591-2) 441 153 / 441 608  
E-mail: semillas@ceibo.entelnet.bo  
Website: <http://www.semillas.org>

**BRAZIL**

Serviço Nacional de Proteção de Cultivares  
(SNPC)  
Secretaria de Desenvolvimento Agropecuário e  
Cooperativismo (SDC)  
Ministério da Agricultura, Pecuária e  
Abastecimento  
Serviços Proteção de Cultivares  
Esplanada dos Ministérios, Bloco D, Anexo A,  
Sala 251  
CEP 70043-900, Brasília, DF

Tel: (55-61) 3218 2547 / 2549  
Fax: (55-61) 3224 28 42  
E-mail: snpc@agricultura.gov.br  
Website: <http://www.agricultura.gov.br>

## **BULGARIA**

State Patent Office of the Republic of Bulgaria  
52 B, Dr. G.M. Dimitrov Blvd.  
BG-1040 Sofia

Tel: (359-2) 873 51 75  
Fax: (359-2) 873 51 78  
E-mail: [bpo@bg.net](mailto:bpo@bg.net)  
Website: <http://www.bpo.bg>

Central Office "Variety Testing"  
Executive Agency for Variety Testing  
Field Inspection and Seed Control (IASAS)  
125 Tzarigradsko shose Blvd.  
Block I  
1113 Sofia

Tel: (359-2) 700 375  
Fax: (359-2) 71 36 35

## **CANADA**

Plant Breeders' Rights Office  
8th Floor, 2 Constellation Crescent  
Ottawa  
Ontario  
K1A 0Y9

Tel: (1-613) 221-7521  
Fax: (1-613) 228-4552  
E-mail: [vsisson@inspection.gc.ca](mailto:vsisson@inspection.gc.ca)  
Website: <http://www.inspection.gc.ca/english/plaveg/pbrpov/pbrpove.shtml>

## **CHILE**

Ministerio de Agricultura  
Servicio Agrícola y Ganadero (SAG)  
Departamento de Semillas  
Avda Bulnes 140  
Casilla 1167-21  
Santiago de Chile

Tel: (56-2) 696 29 96, 698 22 44  
Fax: (56-2) 696 64 80  
E-mail: [semillas@sag.gob.cl](mailto:semillas@sag.gob.cl)  
Website: <http://www.sag.gob.cl>

## **CHINA**

Office for the Protection of New Varieties of  
Plants  
Ministry of Agriculture  
Building 20  
Maizidian Jie  
Beijing 100125

Tel: (86-10) 6592 5051  
Fax: (86-10) 6592 3176  
E-mail: [cnpvp@agri.gov.cn](mailto:cnpvp@agri.gov.cn)  
Website: <http://www.cnpvp.cn>

Office for the Protection of New Varieties of  
Plants  
State Forestry Administration  
18 Hepingli Dongjie  
Beijing 100714

Tel: (86-10) 8423 9104  
Fax: (86-10) 8423 8883  
E-mail: [webmaster@cnpvp.net](mailto:webmaster@cnpvp.net)  
Website: <http://www.cnpvp.gov.cn>

### **COLOMBIA**

Instituto Colombiano Agropecuario (ICA)  
División de Semillas – Oficina 410  
Calle 37 No. 8-43  
Santa Fe de Bogotá

Tel: (57-1) 232 4697, 232 8643  
Fax: (57-1) 232 4695, 288 4037  
E-mail: [obtentores.semillas@ica.gov.co](mailto:obtentores.semillas@ica.gov.co)  
Website: <http://www.ica.gov.co>

### **CROATIA**

Institute for Seed and Seedlings  
Vinkovacka cesta 63c  
31000 Osijek

Tel: (385-31) 275 206  
Fax: (385-31) 275 193  
E-mail: [r.ore@zsr.hr](mailto:r.ore@zsr.hr)  
Website: <http://www.zsr.hr/main.htm>

### **CZECH REPUBLIC**

Central Institute for Supervising and Testing in  
Agriculture  
Department of Plant Variety Rights  
Za Opravnou 4  
150 06 Praha 5 – Motol

Tel: (420-2) 572 11755  
Fax: (420-2) 572 11752  
E-mail: [motol@ooz.zeus.cz](mailto:motol@ooz.zeus.cz)  
Website:  
<http://www.ukzuz.cz/en/index.php>

### **DENMARK**

Plant Directorate  
Department of Variety Testing  
Teglværksvej 10, Tystofte  
DK-4230 Skælskør

Tel: (45) 5816 0600  
Fax: (45) 5816 0606  
E-mail: [afs@pdir.dk](mailto:afs@pdir.dk)  
Website: <http://www.pdir.fvm.dk/afs>

### **ECUADOR**

Instituto Ecuatoriano de la Propiedad Intelectual  
Dirección Nacional de Obtenciones Vegetales  
Avenida República 396 y Diego de Almagro  
Edificio Forum 300, 1<sup>er</sup> piso  
Quito

Tel: (593-2) 2508 000, ext. 340  
Fax: (593-2) 2508 026  
E-mail: [iepi@interactive.net.ec](mailto:iepi@interactive.net.ec)

### **ESTONIA**

Plant Production Inspectorate  
Variety Control Department  
Vabaduse plats 4  
71020 Viljandi

Tel/Fax: (+372) 433 4650  
E-mail: [pille.ardel@plant.agri.ee](mailto:pille.ardel@plant.agri.ee)  
Website: <http://www.plant.agri.ee>

### EUROPEAN COMMUNITY

Community Plant Variety Office  
P.O. Box 10121  
49021 Angers Cedex 02  
France

Tel: (33-2) 41 25 64 32  
Fax: (33-2) 41 25 64 10  
Website: [www.cpvo.europa.eu](http://www.cpvo.europa.eu)

### FINLAND

Plant Variety Board  
Plant Variety Rights Office  
Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry  
Hallituskatu 3a, Helsinki  
Box 30  
FIN-00023 Government

Tel: (358-9) 160 3316  
Fax: (358-9) 88663  
E-mail: [arto.vuori@mmm.fi](mailto:arto.vuori@mmm.fi)  
Website: <http://www.mmm.fi>

### FRANCE

Comité de la protection des obtentions végétales  
11, rue Jean Nicot  
F-75007 Paris

Tel: (33-1) 42 75 93 14  
Telex 250 648  
Fax: (33-1) 42 75 94 25  
Website: <http://geves.zarcrom.fr>

### GERMANY

Bundessortenamt  
Postfach 61 04 40  
D-30604 Hannover

Tel: (49-511) 9566-5  
Fax: (49-511) 563362  
E-mail: [bsa@bundessortenamt.de](mailto:bsa@bundessortenamt.de)  
Website: <http://www.bundessortenamt.de>

### HUNGARY

Hungarian Patent Office  
Magyar Szabadalmi Hivatal  
Garibaldi-u.2 - B.P. 552  
H-1370 Budapest

Tel: (36-1) 312 44 00, 331 3992  
Fax: (36-1) 311 48 41, 331 25 96  
E-mail: [mszh@hungary.com](mailto:mszh@hungary.com)  
Website: <http://www.hpo.hu>

### ICELAND

Agricultural Research Institute  
Ministry of Agriculture  
Solvholsgata 7, 4th floor  
IS-150 Reykjavik

Tel: (354) 545 9750  
Fax: (354) 552 1160  
E-mail: [thorsteinn.tomasson@lan.stjr.is](mailto:thorsteinn.tomasson@lan.stjr.is)

## **IRELAND**

Controller of Plant Breeders' Rights  
Department of Agriculture and Food  
Backweston  
Leixlip  
Co. Kildare

Tel: (353) 1-628 0608  
Fax: (353) 1-628 0634  
E-mail: [backwest@agriculture.gov.ie](mailto:backwest@agriculture.gov.ie)  
Website: <http://www.gov.ie/daff>

## **ISRAEL**

The Plant Breeders' Rights Council  
Ministry of Agriculture and Development  
P.O. Box 30  
Bet-Dagan 50250

Tel: (972-3) 948 5450  
Fax: (972-3)-948 5839  
E-mail: [pbr@moag.gov.il](mailto:pbr@moag.gov.il)  
[ilpbr\\_tu@int.gov.il](mailto:ilpbr_tu@int.gov.il)  
Website: <http://www.moag.gov.il>

## **ITALY**

Ufficio Italiano Brevetti e Marchi  
Ministero delle attività produttive  
19, via Molise  
I-00187 Roma

Tel: (39-06) 47 05 1, 488 43 54 (Div. IV)  
Fax: (39-06) 47 05 30 35  
E-mail: [segreteria.dgspc@minindustria.it](mailto:segreteria.dgspc@minindustria.it)  
Website: <http://www.minindustria.it>

## **JAPAN**

Seeds and Seedlings Division  
Agricultural Production Bureau  
Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries  
1-2-1 Kasumigaseki - Chiyoda-ku  
Tokyo 100

Tel: (81-3) 35 91 05 24  
Fax: (81-3) 35 02 65 72  
Website: <http://www.hinsyu.maff.go.jp/english/index.htm>

## **JORDAN**

The Registrar  
New Plant Variety Protection Office  
Ministry of Agriculture  
Q. Rania Alabdalah street  
Amman

Tel: (962) 6 568 6151  
Fax: (962) 6 565 1786  
E-mail: [pvp@moa.gov.jo](mailto:pvp@moa.gov.jo)

## **KENYA**

Plant Breeders' Rights Office  
Kenya Plant Health Inspectorate Service  
(KEPHIS)  
Headquarters  
Waiyaki Way  
P.O. Box 49592  
Nairobi

Tel: (254-20) 44 40 29 / 44 40 31  
Fax: (254-20) 44 89 40 / 44 00 87  
E-mail: [pvpo@kephis.org](mailto:pvpo@kephis.org)  
Website: <http://www.kephis.org>

## KYRGYZSTAN

State Agency of Science and Intellectual Property  
62 Moskovskaya Street  
720021 Bishkek  
House 10/1, Microregion 11  
720049 Bishkek

Tel: (+996-3312) 51 08 10 / 68 08 19  
Fax: (+996-3312) 51 08 13 / 68 17 03  
E-mail: [kyrgyzpatent@infotel.kg](mailto:kyrgyzpatent@infotel.kg)  
Website: <http://www.kyrgyzpatent.kg>

## LATVIA

Plant Variety Testing Department  
State Plant Protection Service  
Lubanas iela, 49  
LV-1073 Riga

Tel: (+371) 7365567  
Fax: (+371) 7365571  
E-mail: [sergejs.katanenko@vaad.gov.lv](mailto:sergejs.katanenko@vaad.gov.lv)  
Website: <http://www.vaad.gov.lv>

## LITHUANIA

Lithuanian State Plant Varieties Testing Centre  
Smelio st. 8  
LT-2055 Vilnius

Tel: (370 5) 234 3647  
Fax: (370 5) 234 1862  
E-mail: [sigitaavtc@takas.lt](mailto:sigitaavtc@takas.lt)  
Website: <http://www.avtc.lt>

## MEXICO

Servicio Nacional de Inspección y  
Certificación de Semillas (SNICS)  
Secretaría de Agricultura, Ganadería y  
Desarrollo Rural, Pesca y Alimentación  
Av. Presidente Juárez No. 13  
Col. El Cortijo  
54000 Tlalnepantla, Estado de México

Tel: (52-5) 5384 2213  
Fax: (52-5) 5390 1441  
Website:  
<http://www.sagarpa.gob.mx/snics/>

## MOROCCO

Chef Service de Contrôle des Semences et Plants  
Direction de la Protection des Végétaux, des  
Contrôles Techniques et de la Répression des  
Fraudes  
Ministère de l'Agriculture, du Développement  
Rural et des Pêches Maritimes  
B.P. 1308, Rue Hafiane Cherkaoui  
Rabat

Tel: +212 37 771085  
Fax: +212 37 779852  
E-mail: [amar.tahiri@menara.ma](mailto:amar.tahiri@menara.ma)

## NETHERLANDS

Postal address:  
Raad voor Plantenrassen  
Postbus 27  
NL-6710 BA Ede

Tel: (31-318) 82 25 80  
Fax: (31-318) 82 25 89  
E-mail: [plantenrassen@naktuinbouw.nl](mailto:plantenrassen@naktuinbouw.nl)  
Website: <http://www.plantenrassen.nl>

**NEW ZEALAND**

The Commissioner  
Intellectual Property Office of New Zealand  
Plant Variety Rights  
Ministry of Economic Development  
P.O. Box 9241  
Marion Square  
Wellington 6141

Tel: (64 4) 9783624  
Fax: (64 4) 978 3691  
E-mail: [info@iponz.govt.nz](mailto:info@iponz.govt.nz)  
Website: <http://www.iponz.govt.nz>

**NICARAGUA**

Registro de la Propiedad Intelectual  
Ministerio de Fomento, Industria y Comercio  
(MIFIC)  
Apartado postal 8  
Managua

Tel: (505) 267 3061, 237 2417, 267 2417  
ext. 1279, 1221  
Fax: (505) 267 5393  
E-mail: [gzelaya@mific.gob.ni](mailto:gzelaya@mific.gob.ni)  
[rpi-nic@ibw.com.ni](mailto:rpi-nic@ibw.com.ni)  
Website: <http://www.mific.gob.ni/comercio/dirmercados/propintelectual.html>

**NORWAY**

Plantesortsnemnda  
P.O. Box 3  
N-1431 Ås

Tel: (47) 64 94 44 00  
Fax: (47) 64 94 44 10  
Website: [www.plantesortsnemnda.no](http://www.plantesortsnemnda.no)

**PANAMA**

Dirección General del Registro  
de la Propiedad Industrial (DIGERPI)  
Ministerio de Comercio e Industrias  
Apartado 9658 – Zona 4  
Panamá 4

Tel: (507) 227 39 87 / 227 25 35  
Fax: (507) 227 21 39 / 275 604  
E-mail: [digerpi@sinfo.net](mailto:digerpi@sinfo.net)  
Website: [www.digerpi.gob.pa](http://www.digerpi.gob.pa)

**PARAGUAY**

Ministerio de Agricultura y Ganadería  
Dirección de Semillas (DISE)  
Gaspar R. de Francia No. 685  
c/ Mcal. Estigarribia  
San Lorenzo

Tel: (595) 21 58 22 01  
Fax: (595) 21 58 46 45  
E-mail: [dise@telesurf.com.py](mailto:dise@telesurf.com.py)



**POLAND**

Research Center for Cultivar Testing  
(COBORU)  
63-022 Slupia Wielka

Tel: (48-61) 285 23 41  
Fax: (48-61) 285 35 58  
E-mail: sekretariat@coboru.pl  
Website: <http://www.coboru.pl>

**PORTUGAL**

Centro Nacional de Registo de Variedades  
Protegidas (CENARVE)  
Edifício II da DGPC  
Tapada da Ajuda  
P-1300 Lisboa

Tel: (351-213) 613 216  
Fax: (351-213) 613 222  
E-mail: [info@dgpc.min-agricultura.pt](mailto:info@dgpc.min-agricultura.pt)  
Website: <http://www.dgpc.min-agricultura.pt>

**REPUBLIC OF KOREA**

The Director General  
National Seed Management Office  
Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry  
433 Anyang-6-dong  
Anyang City 430-016

Tel: (+82-31) 467-0150  
Fax: (+82-31) 467-0161  
E-mail: [info@seed.go.kr](mailto:info@seed.go.kr)  
Website: <http://www.seed.go.kr>

**REPUBLIC OF MOLDOVA**

State Commission for Crops Variety Testing and  
Registration  
Ministry of Agriculture  
Bul. Stefan cel Mare 162  
C.P. 1873  
2004 Chisinau

Tel: (373-22) 462 22, 203 00  
Fax: (373-22) 469 21, 115 37  
E-mail: [csispmd@yahoo.com](mailto:csispmd@yahoo.com)

State Agency on Intellectual Property (AGEPI)  
24/1 Andrei Doga Street  
2024 Chisinau

Tel: (373-22) 44 00 94  
Fax: (373-22) 44 00 94  
E-mail: [office@agepi.md](mailto:office@agepi.md)  
Website: <http://www.agepi.md>

**ROMANIA**

State Office for Inventions and Trademarks  
(OSIM)  
5, Ion Ghica Str., Sector 3  
P.O. Box 52  
70018 Bucharest

Tel: (40-1) 315 90 66  
Fax: (373-2) 312 38 19  
E-mail: [office@osim.ro](mailto:office@osim.ro)  
Website: <http://www.osim.ro>

## **RUSSIAN FEDERATION**

State Commission of the Russian Federation for  
Selection Achievements Test and Protection  
Orlikov per., 1/11  
107139 Moscow

Tel: (7-495) 207 49 26  
Fax: (7-495) 411 83 66  
E-mail: [gossort@gossort.com](mailto:gossort@gossort.com)  
Website: <http://www.gossort.com>

## **SINGAPORE**

Intellectual Property Office of Singapore (IPOS)  
51 Bras Basah Road #04-01  
Plaza by the Park

Tel: (65) 6331 6580  
Fax: (65) 6339 0252  
E-mail: [dennis\\_low@ipos.gov.sg](mailto:dennis_low@ipos.gov.sg)  
Website:  
<http://www.ipos.gov.sg/main/index.html>

## **SLOVAKIA**

Ministry of Agriculture  
Dobrovicova 12  
812 66 Bratislava

Tel: (421-2) 592 66 290  
Fax: (421-2) 592 66 294  
E-mail: [lucia.povodova@land.gov.sk](mailto:lucia.povodova@land.gov.sk)  
Website:  
<http://www.mpsr.sk/english/index.htm>

## **SLOVENIA**

Phytosanitary Administration of the Republic of  
Slovenia  
Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Food  
(MAFF)  
Einspielerjeva 6  
1000 Ljubljana

Tel: (386-1) 3094 396  
Fax: (386-1) 3094 335  
E-mail: [furs.mkgp@gov.si](mailto:furs.mkgp@gov.si)  
Website: <http://www.furs.si>

## **SOUTH AFRICA**

The Registrar  
National Department of Agriculture  
Directorate: South African Agricultural Food,  
Quarantine and Inspection Services  
Private Bag X 11  
Gezina 0031

Tel: (27-12) 808 03 65, 808 50 80  
Fax: (27-12) 808 03 65, 808 50 80  
E-mail: [variety.control@nda.agric.za](mailto:variety.control@nda.agric.za)

## **SPAIN**

Oficina Española de Variedades Vegetales  
(OEVV)  
Ministerio de Agricultura, Pesca y Alimentación  
C/ Alfonso XII nº 62, 2 planta  
28014 Madrid

Tel: (34) 91 347 65 93  
Fax: (34) 91 347 67 03  
Website: <http://www.mapa.es>

**SWEDEN**

Swedish Board of Agriculture  
Crop Production Division  
S-551 82 Jönköping

Tel: (46-36) 15 55 15 / 15 58 85  
Fax: (46-36) 71 05 17  
E-mail: jordbruksverket@sjv.se  
Website: <http://www.sjv.se>

Swedish Board of Agriculture  
Seed Division  
Box 83  
SE- 268 22 Svalöv

E-mail: utsadeskontroll@sjv.se  
Website: <http://www.sjv.se>

**SWITZERLAND**

Bundesamt für Landwirtschaft  
Büro für Sortenschutz  
Mattenhofstr. 5  
CH-3003 Bern

Tel: (41-31) 322 25 24  
Fax: (41-31) 322 26 34  
E-mail: manuela.brand@blw.admin.ch  
Website: [www.blw.admin.ch](http://www.blw.admin.ch)

**TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO**

Controller  
Intellectual Property Office  
Ministry of Legal Affairs  
72-74 South Quay  
Port of Spain

Tel: (1-868) 625 99 72, 627 95 67  
Fax: (1-868) 624 12 21  
E-mail: [info@ipo.gov.tt](mailto:info@ipo.gov.tt)

**TUNISIA**

Direction générale de la protection et du contrôle  
de la qualité des produits agricoles  
Service d'homologation et de protection des  
obtentions végétales  
30, rue Alain Savary  
1002 Tunis

Tel: (216 71) 788979 / 800419  
Fax: (216 71) 784419

**TURKEY**

Variety Registration and Seed Certification Centre  
Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Affairs  
Gayret Mah.Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:62  
P.O. Box: 30  
06172 Yenimahalle - Ankara

Tel: + 90 312 3154605  
Fax: + 90 312 3150901  
E-mail: [kyilmaz@tagem.gov.tr](mailto:kyilmaz@tagem.gov.tr)

## UKRAINE

State Services for Plant Variety Rights Protection  
15, Henerala Rodimtseva str.  
03041 Kyiv

Tel: (380-44) 257 99 33  
Fax: (380-44) 257 99 34  
E-mail: [sops@sops.gov.ua](mailto:sops@sops.gov.ua)  
Website:  
<http://www.sops.gov.ua/index.htm>

## UNITED KINGDOM

Department for Environment, Food & Rural  
Affairs (DEFRA)  
The Plant Variety Rights Office and Seeds  
Division  
White House Lane  
Huntingdon Road  
Cambridge CB3 0LF

Tel: (44-1223) 34 23 81  
Telex 817 422 pvscam g  
Fax: (44-1223) 34 23 86  
E-mail: [mike.wray@defra.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:mike.wray@defra.gsi.gov.uk)  
Website:  
[www.defra.gov.uk/planth/pvs/default.htm](http://www.defra.gov.uk/planth/pvs/default.htm)

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

The Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark  
Office (USPTO)  
Mail Stop International Relations  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Tel: (1-571) 272 9300  
Fax: (1-571) 273 0085  
Website: <http://www.uspto.gov>

The Commissioner  
Plant Variety Protection Office  
Agricultural Marketing Service  
Department of Agriculture  
Beltsville, Maryland 20705-2351

Tel: (1-301) 504 55 18  
Fax: (1-301) 504 52 91  
Website: <http://www.ams.usda.gov/science/pvpo/pvpindex.htm>

## URUGUAY

Instituto Nacional de Semillas (INASE)  
Casilla de Correos 7731  
Pando  
90.000 Canelones

Tel: (598-2) 288 7099  
Fax: (598-2) 288 7077  
E-mail: [inasepre@adinet.com.uy](mailto:inasepre@adinet.com.uy)  
Website: [www.chasque.apc.org/inase](http://www.chasque.apc.org/inase)

## UZBEKISTAN

State Patent Office  
2a, Toitepa St.  
700047 Tashkent

Tel: (998 71) 13200 13  
Fax: (998 71) 13345 56  
E-mail: [info@patent.uz](mailto:info@patent.uz)  
Website: <http://www.patent.uz/eng/>

**VIETNAM**

Plant Variety Protection Office of Viet Nam  
Ministry of Agriculture and Rural Development  
(MARD)  
No 2 Ngoc Ha Str  
Ba Dinh District  
Hanoi

Tel: (84 4) 8435182  
Fax: (84 4) 7342844  
E-mail: [thongph.nn@mard.gov.vn](mailto:thongph.nn@mard.gov.vn)  
Website:  
<http://pvpo.mard.gov.vn/english.asp>

## APPENDIX III

### PLACES MAINTAINING NOMENCLATURAL STANDARDS

Only those places known to be actively collecting and maintaining designated nomenclatural standards are listed here. Citation of herbarium acronyms is in accordance with *Index Herbariorum* which may be consulted online at <http://sciweb.nybg.org/science2/IndexHerbariorum.asp>. Contact details are as in that work unless a particular worker at that institution dealing with cultivated plant taxonomy has been identified.

Readers are invited to contact the Editors (E-mail: [icncp@rhs.org.uk](mailto:icncp@rhs.org.uk)) to inform them about other herbaria maintaining standards or to amend details of those currently listed.

#### AUSTRALIA

##### (CANB) Australian National Herbarium

Centre for Plant Biodiversity Research  
GPO Box 1600  
Canberra A.C.T. 2601

Contact: Brendan Lepschi  
Fax: (+61) 2 6246 5249  
E-mail: [brendan.lepschi@csiro.au](mailto:brendan.lepschi@csiro.au)  
<http://www.anbg.gov.au/cpbr/herbarium>

##### (MEL) National Herbarium of Victoria

Royal Botanic Gardens  
Birdwood Avenue  
South Yarra  
Victoria 3141

Contact: Roger D. Spencer  
Fax: (+61) 3 9252 2350  
E-mail: [rspenc@rbgmelb.org.au](mailto:rspenc@rbgmelb.org.au)  
[http://www.rbg.vic.gov.au/research\\_and\\_conservation/herbarium.html](http://www.rbg.vic.gov.au/research_and_conservation/herbarium.html)

#### CANADA

##### (HAM) Royal Botanical Gardens

Royal Botanical Gardens  
PO Box 399  
Hamilton  
Ontario  
L8N 3H8

Contact: Natalie Iwanycki  
Tel: (+1) 905 527 1158  
Fax: (+1) 905 577 0375  
E-mail: [niwanycki@rbg.ca](mailto:niwanycki@rbg.ca)  
[http://www.rbg.ca/pages\\_sci\\_conserv/sci\\_conserv\\_herbarium.html](http://www.rbg.ca/pages_sci_conserv/sci_conserv_herbarium.html)

## CHINA

### (NF) Nanjing Forest University

Nanjing 210037  
Jiangsu

Contact: Xian-Rong Wang  
E-mail: lamina\_w@hotmail.com

## THE NETHERLANDS

### (WAG) National Herbarium Nederland, Wageningen

Wageningen University Branch  
Generaal Foulkesweg 37  
6703 BL Wageningen

Contact: J. Folkert Aleva  
Fax: (+31) 317 484917  
E-mail: folkert.aleva@wur.nl  
<http://www.nationaalherbarium.nl>

## NEW ZEALAND

### (CHR) Allan Herbarium

Landcare Research New Zealand Ltd.  
PO Box 40  
Lincoln 7640  
Lincoln

Contact: Ilse Breitwieser  
Tel: (+64) 3 321 9621  
Fax: (+64) 3 321 9998  
E-mail: [breitwieseri@landcareresearch.co.nz](mailto:breitwieseri@landcareresearch.co.nz)  
<http://www.landcareresearch.co.nz/research/biodiversity/plantsprog/herbarium.asp>

## SOUTH AFRICA

### (NH) Kwazulu-Natal Herbarium

Box 52099  
Berea Rd  
Durban 4007

Contact: Hugh F. Glen  
E-mail: [glen@sanbi.org](mailto:glen@sanbi.org)  
<http://www.sanbi.org>

## UNITED KINGDOM

### (E) Royal Botanic Garden, Edinburgh

Herbarium, Royal Botanic Garden  
Edinburgh  
EH3 5LR

Contact: David Harris  
Fax: (+44) 131 248 2901  
E-mail: [herbarium@rbge.org.uk](mailto:herbarium@rbge.org.uk)  
<http://www.rbge.org.uk/rbge/web/collect/herb.jsp>

**(HILL)** Harold Hillier Herbarium

Sir Harold Hillier Gardens  
Jermyns Lane,  
Ampfield, Romsey  
Hampshire SO51 0QA

Contact: Allen Coombes  
Fax: (+44) 1794 368027  
E-mail: [allen.coombes@hants.gov.uk](mailto:allen.coombes@hants.gov.uk)  
<http://www.hillier.hants.gov.uk>

**(RNG)** University of Reading

Herbarium, University of Reading  
The Harborne Building  
Whiteknights  
Reading  
Berkshire RG6 6AS

Contact: Stephen L. Jury  
Fax: (+44) 118 378 8169  
E-mail: [s.l.jury@reading.ac.uk](mailto:s.l.jury@reading.ac.uk)  
<http://www.herbarium.reading.ac.uk>

**(WSY)** Royal Horticultural Society

Royal Horticultural Society's Garden  
Wisley  
Woking  
Surrey  
GU23 6QB

Contact: Christopher M. Whitehouse  
Fax: (+44) 1483 211750  
E-mail: [christopherwhitehouse@rhs.org.uk](mailto:christopherwhitehouse@rhs.org.uk)  
<http://www.rhs.org.uk/research/herbarium.asp>

**UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**

**(BISH)** Bishop Museum

Herbarium Pacificum  
Bishop Museum  
Department of Natural Sciences  
1525 Bernice Street  
Honolulu  
Hawai'i  
96817-2704

Contact: Napua Harbottle  
Fax: (+1) 808 847 8252  
E-mail: [napuah@bishopmuseum.org](mailto:napuah@bishopmuseum.org)  
<http://www.bishopmuseum.org/research/natsci/botany/botany.html>

**(BKL)** Brooklyn Botanic Garden

Herbarium, Brooklyn Botanic Garden  
1000 Washington Avenue  
Brooklyn  
New York 11225-1099

Contact: Kerry A. Barringer  
Fax: (+1) 718 941 47774  
E-mail: [kerrybarringer@bbg.org](mailto:kerrybarringer@bbg.org)  
<http://www.bbg.org/sci/herbarium/index.html>



**(CONN)** George Safford Torrey Herbarium

University of Connecticut  
Box U-43  
75 North Eagleville Road  
Storrs  
Connecticut 06269-3043

Contact: Robert Capers  
Fax: (+1) 860 486 6364  
E-mail: robert.capers@uconn.edu  
<http://bgbaseserver.eeb.uconn.edu/> Department  
of Ecology and Evolutionary Biology

**(DOV)** Claude E. Phillips Herbarium

Department of Agriculture and Natural  
Resources  
Delaware State University  
Dover  
Delaware 19901-2277

Contact: Arthur O. Tucker, Co-Director  
Fax: (+1) 302 857 6460  
E-mail: atucker@desu.edu  
<http://www.desu.edu/herbarium>

**(MU)** Willard Sherman Turrell Herbarium

Department of Botany  
Miami University  
79 Upham Hall  
Oxford  
Ohio 45045

Contact: Michael A. Vincent  
Fax: (+1) 513 529 4243  
E-mail: vincenma@muohio.edu  
<http://www.units.muohio.edu/herbarium>

**(NA)** United States National Arboretum

3501 New York Avenue North East  
Washington  
DC 20002-1958

Contact: Mike Cagley  
Fax: (+1) 202 245 4579  
E-mail: mike.cagley@ars.usda.gov  
<http://www.usna.usda.gov/Research/herbarium.html>

## APPENDIX IV

### LIBRARIES HOLDING SIGNIFICANT COLLECTIONS OF NURSERY CATALOGUES

As a guide to those wishing to find a library to deposit nursery catalogues or printed versions of nursery catalogues on the internet (in accordance with Rec. 25B.2), the following list is provided. There is no standardised means of referring to these collections in a similar way that herbaria are given unique abbreviations.

Readers are invited to contact the Editors (E-mail: [icncp@rhs.org.uk](mailto:icncp@rhs.org.uk)) to inform them about other libraries with significant and actively maintained collections of nursery catalogues or to amend details of those currently listed.

For details of further collections in North America please refer to The Council on Botanical and Horticultural Libraries publication on *Nursery and Seed Catalogs: A directory of collections* (Revised edition) (1990), which is available from the New York Botanical Garden.

#### CANADA

##### **Royal Botanic Gardens Library**

680 Plains Road West  
Hamilton/Burlington  
Ontario, Canada  
L7T 4H4

Tel: (+1) 905 527 1158  
Website: [http://www.rbg.ca/pages\\_sci\\_conserv/sci\\_conserv\\_library.html](http://www.rbg.ca/pages_sci_conserv/sci_conserv_library.html)

#### FRANCE

##### **Bibliothèque Générale**

Agrocampus Ouest centre de formation d'Angers  
Institut National d'Horticulture et de Paysage  
2 rue le Nôtre  
49045 Angers Cedex 01  
France

Tel: (+33) 2 41 22 55 63  
Fax: (+33) 2 41 73 15 57

##### **Bibliothèque-CDI**

Société Nationale d'Horticulture de France  
84 rue de Grenelle  
75007 Paris  
France

Tel: (+33) 1 44 39 78 71  
Fax: (+33) 1 44 39 78 95  
E-mail: [bib.cdi@snhf.org](mailto:bib.cdi@snhf.org)

## GERMANY

### **Bücherei des Deutschen Gartenbaues e.V.**

c/o TU Berlin, Universitätsbibliothek  
Fasanenstr. 88  
D 10623 Berlin  
Germany

Tel: (+49) 30 314 76 149 (Thursday only)  
E-mail: garbue@gmx.de  
Website: <http://www.gartenbaubuecherei.de>

## NETHERLANDS

### **Bibliotheek Wageningen UR**

(Special Collections)  
Postbus 9100  
6700 HA Wageningen  
The Netherlands

Tel: (+31) 317 482701  
Fax: (+31) 317 484761  
E-mail: [speccoll.library@wur.nl](mailto:speccoll.library@wur.nl)  
Website: [http://library.wur.nl/speccoll/nursery\\_catalogues/](http://library.wur.nl/speccoll/nursery_catalogues/)

### **KAVB library**

PO Box 175  
NL 2180 AD Hillegom  
Weersesteinstraat 10A  
NL 2181 GA Hillegom  
The Netherlands

Tel: (+31) 252 53 69 50  
Fax: (+31) 252 536951  
E-mail: [library@kavb.nl](mailto:library@kavb.nl)  
Website: [www.kavb.nl](http://www.kavb.nl)

## SOUTH AFRICA

### **Mary Gunn Library**

SANBI National Herbarium  
Private Bag X101  
Pretoria  
0001 South Africa

Tel: (+27) 12 843 5000  
Fax: (+27) 12 804 8740  
Website: <http://www.sanbi.org/information/marygunn.htm>

## SWEDEN

### **Alnarp Library**

PO Box 51  
SE-230 53  
Alnarp  
Sweden

Tel: (+46) 40 415050  
Fax: (+46) 40 415058  
E-mail: [alnarpsbiblioteket@bibal.slu.se](mailto:alnarpsbiblioteket@bibal.slu.se)  
Website: <http://www.bib.slu.se/bibliotek/alnarp/eplantskolekat.html>

## **UK**

### **Lindley Library London**

Royal Horticultural Society  
80 Vincent Square  
London  
SW1P 2PE  
UK

Tel: (+44) 20 7821 3050  
Fax: (+44) 20 7821 3022  
E-mail: [library.london@rhs.org.uk](mailto:library.london@rhs.org.uk)  
Website: [http://www.rhs.org.uk/  
Learning/Library/](http://www.rhs.org.uk/Learning/Library/)

## **USA**

### **Andersen Horticultural Library**

University of Minnesota Landscape Arboretum  
3675 Arboretum Drive  
Chaska, MN 55318  
USA

Tel: (+1) 952 443 1405  
Fax: (+1) 952 443 2521  
E-mail: [kallen@unm.edu](mailto:kallen@unm.edu)  
Website: [http://www.arboretum.umn.edu/  
librarycollections.aspx](http://www.arboretum.umn.edu/librarycollections.aspx)

### **L.H. Bailey Hortorium**

Dept. of Plant Biology  
412 Mann Library Bldg.  
Cornell University  
Ithaca, NY 14853  
USA

Tel: (+1) 607 255 0863 or 255 0455  
Fax: (+1) 607 255 5407  
E-mail: [herbarium@cornell.edu](mailto:herbarium@cornell.edu)  
Website: [http://bhort.bh.cornell.edu/  
catalogs.htm](http://bhort.bh.cornell.edu/catalogs.htm)

### **Elisabeth C Miller Library**

University of Washington Botanic Gardens  
3501 NE 41st Street  
Seattle, WA 98195  
USA

Tel: (+1) 206 543 0415  
Fax: (+1) 206 897 1435  
E-mail: [hortlib@u.washington.edu](mailto:hortlib@u.washington.edu)  
Website: <http://www.millerlibrary.org>

### **Henry G. Gilbert Nursery and Seed Trade Catalog Collection**

USDA National Agricultural Library  
Abraham Lincoln Building  
10301 Baltimore Avenue  
Beltsville, MD 20705-2351  
USA

Tel: (+1) 301 504 5876  
E-mail: [speccoll@ars.usda.gov](mailto:speccoll@ars.usda.gov)  
Website: [http://www.nal.usda.gov/speccoll/  
collectionsguide/nurserycatalogs.shtml](http://www.nal.usda.gov/speccoll/collectionsguide/nurserycatalogs.shtml)

### **The LuEsther T. Mertz Library**

International Plant Science Center  
The New York Botanical Garden  
200th Street and Kazimiroff Blvd.  
Bronx, NY 10458-5126  
USA

Tel: (+1) 718 817 8604  
E-mail: [libref@nybg.org](mailto:libref@nybg.org)  
Website: <http://library.nybg.org>

**Sterling Morton Library**

The Morton Arboretum  
4100 Illinois Route 53  
Lisle, IL 60532-1293  
USA

Tel: (+1) 630 719 2430  
Fax: (+1) 630 719 7950  
E-mail: [library@mortonarb.org](mailto:library@mortonarb.org)  
Website: <http://www.mortonarb.org/>

**University of Delaware Library Special Collections**

Morris Library  
181 South College Avenue  
Newark, DE 19717-5267  
USA

Tel: (+1) 302 831-2229  
Website: <http://www.lib.udel.edu/ud/spec/>

## APPENDIX V

## SPECIAL DENOMINATION CLASSES

The denomination class is the unit within which the use of a cultivar, Group or grex epithet may not be duplicated except when reuse of an epithet is permitted in accordance with Art. 30 (but see also Art. 21.8) [Art. 6.1].

A denomination class under the provisions of this *Code* is a single genus or hybrid genus unless a special denomination class has been determined by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration [Art. 6.2].

The ISHS Commission has determined the following special denomination classes:

***ANACARDIACEAE***

Denomination Class: ***Mangifera indica*** L.

Denomination Class: ***Mangifera*** L., other than *M. indica* L.

***CACTACEAE***

Denomination Class: **Tribe *Hylocereeae*** (Britton & Rose) Buxb.: *Disocactus* Lindl.; *Epiphyllum* Haw: *Hylocereus* (A. Berger) Britton & Rose; *Pseudorhipsalis* Britton & Rose; *Selenicereus* (A. Berger) Britton & Rose; *Weberocereus* Britton & Rose and their hybrids and their synonyms

***CRASSULACEAE***

Denomination Class: ***Jovibarba*** Opiz; ***Rosularia*** (DC.) Stapf; ***Sempervivum*** L. and their synonyms

***CUPRESSACEAE***

Denomination Class: ***Chamaecyparis*** Spach; ***Cupressus*** L.; ***Xanthocyparis*** Farjon & T.H. Nguyễn and their hybrids and their synonyms

***IRIDACEAE***

Denomination Class: ***Gladiolus*** L., large-flowering types

Denomination Class: ***Gladiolus*** L., species and early-flowering types

Denomination Class: ***Iris*** L., bulbous types

Denomination Class: ***Iris*** L., non-bulbous types

**MALVACEAE**

Denomination Class: *Hibiscus rosa-sinensis* L.

Denomination Class: *Hibiscus* L., other than *H. rosa-sinensis* L.

**ORCHIDACEAE**

The following are the special denomination classes in *Orchidaceae* within which grex and Group names may not be repeated. With the exception of the genus *Pleione* the denomination class for orchid cultivar epithets is the species or grex. In *Pleione* the denomination class for cultivar, Group and grex epithets is the genus.

Denomination Class: *Anguloa* Ruiz & Pav.; *Ida* A.Ryan & Oakeley; *Lycaste* Lindl. and their hybrids and their synonyms

Denomination Class: *Ascocentrum* Schltr. ex J.J. Sm.; *Vanda* Jones ex R.Br. and their hybrid and their synonyms

Denomination Class: *Cochlioda* Lindl.; *Cyrtochilum* Kunth; *Miltonia* Lindl.; *Odontoglossum* Kunth; *Oncidium* Sw. and their hybrids and their synonyms

Denomination Class: *Doritis* Lindl.; *Kingiella* Rolfe; *Phalaenopsis* Blume and their hybrids and their synonyms

**ROSACEAE**

Denomination Class: *Potentilla fruticosa* L. sensu lato and its synonyms

Denomination Class: *Potentilla* L., other than *P. fruticosa* L. sensu lato and its synonyms.

## APPENDIX VI

## LIST OF CONSERVED AND REJECTED EPITHETS

Epithets may be permanently conserved by action of the IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants upon written request from an International Cultivar Registration Authority or any other interested party who makes a submission to the Commission.

Submissions, which must contain written details for each case to be considered, must be made to the Secretary of the Commission: Drs W. L. A. Hetterscheid, Department of Plant Sciences, Wageningen University, Generaal Foulkesweg 37, 6703 BL Wageningen, The Netherlands, E-mail: Wilbert.Hetterscheid@wur.nl

The following list remains permanently open for additions.

*ANDROMEDA* (Ericaceae)

‘**Compacta Alba**’ in *Andromeda polifolia* ‘Compacta Alba’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

*CALLUNA* (Ericaceae)

‘**Alba Jae**’ in *C. vulgaris* ‘Alba Jae’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

‘**Corrie’s White**’ in *C. vulgaris* ‘Corrie’s White’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* ‘Corrie’s Form’

‘**Dainty Bess Junior**’ in *C. vulgaris* ‘Dainty Bess Junior’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* ‘Bess Junior’

‘**Hirsuta Albiflora**’ in *C. vulgaris* ‘Hirsuta Albiflora’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

‘**Pyramidalis**’ in *C. vulgaris* ‘Pyramidalis’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

rejected name: *C. vulgaris* ‘Alba Pyramidalis’

*ERICA* (Ericaceae)

‘**Baylay’s Variety**’ in *E. cinerea* ‘Baylay’s Variety’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

‘**King George**’ in *E. carnea* ‘King George’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

rejected name: *E. carnea* ‘King George V’



**‘Mrs Sam Doncaster’** in *E. carnea* ‘Mrs Sam Doncaster’ (2004 in *Heathers* 1:64)

rejected name: *E. carnea* ‘Mrs Samuel Doncaster’

**VIBURNUM** (*Caprifoliaceae*)

**‘Sterile’** in *V. macrocephalum* ‘Sterile’ (1995 in *ICNCP* 6<sup>th</sup> edition:69)

syn: *V. macrocephalum* Fortune var. *macrocephalum*  
*V. macrocephalum* var. *sterile* Dippel, Handb. Laubh. 1: 178. 1889 *nom. illegit.*  
*V. keteleeri macrocephalum* Carrière, Rev. Hort, 1863:271. 1863  
*V. fortunei* hort. ex Nicholson, Ill. Dic. Gard. 4 : 155. 1887 *pro syn.*

## APPENDIX VII

### LATIN NAMES OF PLANTS

The formation and use of botanical names of plants in Latin form are governed by the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature*, also called the Botanical Code or *ICBN*. The current edition (2006) was formulated as a result of decisions taken at the 17th International Botanical Congress held in Vienna in July 2005 and is commonly known as the Vienna Code.

The *ICBN* deals with the naming of taxonomic groups (abbreviated to taxa; singular taxon) and these are arranged in a hierarchical order in consecutively subordinate ranks.

The principal ranks of taxa in descending sequence are: kingdom, division (or phylum), class, order, family, genus and species, of which the species is usually considered the basic rank. Only the final three ranks are in general use for the nomenclature of cultivated plants.

#### FAMILY NAMES

These end with the letters *-aceae* and are based upon the name of a genus.

Examples: *Apiaceae* based on the genus *Apium*; *Brassicaceae* based on *Brassica*; *Caryophyllaceae* based on *Caryophyllus*; *Ginkgoaceae* based on *Ginkgo*; *Rosaceae* based on *Rosa*; *Winteraceae* based on *Wintera*.

An exception to this rule is made for long-standing family names which are descriptive and are not based on generic names; their use is authorised as alternative names.

Examples: although *Apiaceae* is based on the genus *Apium*, the long-standing name *Umbelliferae* is permitted as an alternative; likewise *Poaceae*, based on *Poa*, is better known by some as *Gramineae*; and *Asteraceae* is frequently known as *Compositae*.

#### GENUS NAMES

These are a substantive (noun) in the singular, or a word treated as such, and are written with a capital initial letter.

Examples: *Galanthus*, *Lilium*, *Pinus*, *Triticum*, *Zea*, × *Crataemespilus*, + *Crataegomespilus*.

The name of a subdivision of a genus, such as subgenus, section, or series, is a combination of a generic name and subdivisional epithet connected by a term denoting its rank. The epithet is written with a capital initial letter and, when written in connection with a specific epithet, is placed in parentheses.

Examples: *Prunus* (subg. *Cerasus*) *avium*; *Primula* (sect. *Candelabra*) *japonica*; *Iris* (ser. *Laevigatae*) *laevigata*.

## SPECIES NAMES

The scientific name of a species is a binomial combination (binomen) in Latin form consisting of a name of the genus followed by a single specific epithet.

Example: *Lilium candidum*, where *Lilium* is the generic name and *candidum* is the specific epithet.

Specific epithets, when adjectival in form, agree in gender with the name of their genus. They are written with a lower-case initial letter.

The name of a subdivision of a species, such as subspecies, *varietas* and *forma*, is a combination of a species name and a subspecific epithet connected by a term denoting its rank.

Example: *Ranunculus acris* subsp. *friesianus*; *Rosa sericea* var. *omeiensis*.

## VALID PUBLICATION

To be validly published (established, using the terminology of this *Code*), names of taxa have to be formed in accordance with the provisions of the *ICBN*, be properly published with a Latin description or diagnosis and must have a name-bearing type designated to which the name is permanently attached, whether it is a correct name or a synonym.

## HYBRIDS

The Rules for naming hybrids are covered in Appendix I of the *ICBN* (Names of hybrids). Hybridity is indicated by the use of the multiplication sign,  $\times$ , or by adding the prefix “notho-” (from the Greek *nothos* meaning hybrid) to the name of the rank of the taxon, e.g. nothogenus, nothospecies.

### Hybrid formulae

A hybrid between named taxa (a nothotaxon) may be indicated by placing the multiplication sign  $\times$  between the names of the taxa; the whole expression is called a hybrid formula.

Examples: the hybrid formula for crosses between the grasses *Agrostis* and *Polypogon* is written *Agrostis*  $\times$  *Polypogon*; the hybrid formula for crosses between *Camellia japonica* and *Camellia saluenensis* is *Camellia japonica*  $\times$  *Camellia saluenensis*.

The order of the names in a hybrid formula may be either alphabetical (as in this *Code*) or, when the female parent is known, with the name of the female parent first. The male ( $\sigma$ ) and female ( $\rho$ ) signs may be added if desired. The method used throughout a particular publication should be clearly stated.

When a hybrid formula is used with a cultivar epithet, the hybrid formula should be given in parentheses before the epithet.

Example: the camellia cultivar 'Donation' may be designated *Camellia* (*C. japonica* × *C. saluenensis*) 'Donation'.

### Names of hybrids

Hybrids between representatives of two or more taxa may receive a name. For nomenclatural purposes, the hybrid nature of a taxon is indicated by placing the multiplication sign × before the name of an intergeneric hybrid or before the epithet in the name of an interspecific hybrid.

Examples: using the above examples, the name of the nothogenus *Agrostis* × *Polypogon* is × *Agropogon*; the name of the nothospecies *Camellia japonica* × *Camellia saluenensis* is *C. × williamsii*.

The multiplication sign ×, indicating the hybrid nature of a taxon, should be placed so as to express that it belongs with the name or epithet but is not actually part of it. The exact amount of space, if any, between the multiplication sign and the initial letter of the name or epithet should depend on what best serves readability. If the multiplication sign is not available it should be approximated by a lower case letter "x" (not italicised).

All members of a nothogenus, whatever the species, have the same nothogeneric name.

Example: all progeny derived from the crossing of any *Cupressus* species with any *Chamaecyparis* species may be designated by the nothogenus ×*Cupressocyparis*.

### Formation of nothogeneric names

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving two genera is formed by a combination of parts of the names of the two parent genera, using the first or whole of one, the last part or the whole of the other (but not the whole of both) and, optionally, a connecting vowel. Such names are termed condensed formulae.

Examples: × *Alcathaea* for *Alcea* × *Althaea*; × *Amarcrinum* for *Amaryllis* × *Crinum*; × *Epicattleya* for *Epidendrum* × *Cattleya*;

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving four or more genera is formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *-ara*. Such a name is regarded as a condensed formula but must not exceed eight syllables.

Example: × *Beallara* is the condensed formula for *Brassia* × *Cochlioda* × *Miltonia* × *Odontoglossum*.

The nothogeneric name for a cross involving three genera is either a condensed formula in which the names of the three parental genera are combined into a word not exceeding eight syllables, using the whole or first part of one, followed by the whole or any part of another, followed by the whole or last part of the third (but not the whole of all three) and, optionally, one or two connecting vowels, or it is formed from the name of a person to which is added the termination *-ara*.

When a nothogeneric name is formed from the name of a person, it is the tradition that that person should be a collector, grower or student of the group concerned.

In order to be validly published (established), the name of a nothogenus must be published with a statement of the names of the parent genera but no Latin description or diagnosis is necessary. Since the names of nothogenera are condensed formulae, or are treated as such, they do not have name-bearing types.

#### **Formation of nothospecific names**

The name of a nothospecies is formed and validly published (established) in the same way as that for a species; the hybrid nature is indicated by the addition of a multiplication sign before the epithet. It is not compulsory to use the multiplication sign, which is merely added before the epithet to indicate extra information about the status of the species.

All progeny from a particular combination of species have the same nothospecific epithet.

Examples: all progeny derived from crossing *Cupressus macrocarpa* and *Xanthocyparis nootkatensis* may bear the nothospecific name  $\times$  *Cuprocyparis leylandii*; *Lilium*  $\times$  *sulphurgale* is the name for hybrids between *Lilium regale* and *L. sulphureum*.

## APPENDIX VIII

### THE NOMENCLATURAL FILTER

By following the pathways below, one can check that an “epithet” or “name” is (a) established and (b) accepted. Separate filters are provided for cultivar, Group and grex epithets and for the generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras.

In these filters, the words “epithet” and “name” appear in double quotation marks until the point of establishment is realised. Only then may one consider whether an epithet or name is accepted or not.

In the event of any inconsistency or discrepancy between a filter and the Articles of this *Code*, the *Code* Articles are to be regarded as definitive.

#### 1. CULTIVAR EPITHETS

**1** Has the plant to which the “epithet” is being applied been protected under a grant of Plant Breeders’ Rights or an award of a Plant Patent? (Principle 5)

**YES: → 34 NO: → 2**

**2** Is the “epithet” actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)

**NO: → 3 YES: → STOP** TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF CULTIVAR EPITHETS.

**3** Is the “epithet” another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)

**NO: → 4 YES: → STOP** TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF THE ACCEPTED EPITHET AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF CULTIVAR NAMES.

**4** Has the “epithet” been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)

**NO: → 5 YES: → 37**

**5** Has the “epithet” been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)

**NO: → 6 YES: → STOP** A REJECTED EPITHET MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DENOMINATION CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.

- 6** Has the “epithet” been used before for another plant in the denomination class, even as a trade designation, other than for a Group to which the cultivar is assigned? (Art. 30.1)  
**NO: → 8 YES: → 7**
- 7** Has the “epithet” been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)  
**YES: → 37 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.**
- 8** Has the “epithet” appeared in a publication that is printed or in similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)  
**YES: → 9 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT PUBLISHED.**
- 9** Was the “epithet” published on or after the starting point for the group concerned? (Art. 18.1)  
**YES: → 10 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER PLACE OF PUBLICATION.**
- 10** After 1958, was the publication in which the “epithet” appeared dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)  
**YES: → 11 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED – FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.**
- 11** After 1958, is the “epithet” at least partially in a language other than Latin or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → 12**
- 12** Is the “epithet” taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently re-classified as a cultivar? (Art. 21.5)  
**YES: → 13 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.**
- 13** Before 1959, is the “epithet” one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.**
- 14** After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.13)  
**NO: → 15 YES: → STOP REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.**

- 15** After 1995, is the “epithet” very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)  
**NO: → 16 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 16** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)  
**NO: → 17 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS PERMITTED THROUGH LINGUISTIC CUSTOM (THEN → 17).
- 17** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 18 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 18** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 19 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 19** After 2004, does the “epithet” consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)  
**NO: → 20 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 20** After 1958, do the words “variety” or “form” appear in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.16)  
**NO: → 21 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 21** After 1995, do any of the words “cultivar”, “grex”, “group”, “hybrid”, “maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “sport”, “series” and “strain” or the plural of these words, or the words “improved” or “transformed” appear in the “epithet”, in any language? (Art. 21.17)  
**NO: → 22 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 22** After 1995, is the “epithet” likely to exaggerate the merits of the cultivar? (Art. 21.24)  
**NO: → 23 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 23** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)  
**NO: → 24 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 24** Does the “epithet” contain fractions ? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO: → 25 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.



- 25** Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO:** → **26** **YES:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS TRANSCRIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 26).
- 26** Does the “epithet” consist of a code of more than 10 characters or more than 4 alternating sets of a letter or letter and a number or numbers? (Art. 21.25)  
**NO:** → **27** **YES:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 27** After 1958, is there a description or diagnosis accompanying publication of this “epithet”? (Art. 27.1)  
**YES:** → **29** **NO:** → **28**
- 28** Is there a reference to a previous publication of a description or diagnosis? (Art. 27.1)  
**YES:** → **29** **NO:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 29** Has the “epithet” definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)  
**YES:** → **30** **NO:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 30** Did the cultivar for which the “epithet” was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)  
**YES:** → **31** **NO:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 31** Is the “epithet” against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)  
**YES:** → **32** **NO:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 32** Was another “epithet” proposed by the same author for the same cultivar simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)  
**NO:** → **33** **YES:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 33** **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED EPITHET → 35**
- 34** Has a statutory plant registration authority denominated a different epithet for the cultivar? (Principle 5)  
**NO:** → **37** **YES:** → **STOP** REJECT AS NOT ACCEPTABLE: THE STATUTORY DENOMINATION IS AUTOMATICALLY THE ACCEPTED EPITHET.
- 35** Has the epithet been replaced by a later epithet under the provision of an earlier edition of this *Code*?  
**NO:** → **36** **YES:** → **STOP** REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.

**36** Is this the earliest established epithet for the cultivar?

**YES: → 37 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIEST ESTABLISHED EPITHET.

**37 YOU HAVE THE ACCEPTED EPITHET**

**2. GROUP EPITHET**

- 1** Is the “epithet” actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)  
**NO: → 2 YES: → STOP** TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF GROUP EPITHETS.
- 2** Is the “epithet” another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)  
**NO: → 3 YES: → STOP** TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF ACCEPTED EPITHETS AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF GROUP NAMES.
- 3** Has the “epithet” been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)  
**NO: → 4 YES: → 37**
- 4** Has the “epithet” been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)  
**NO: → 5 YES: → STOP** A REJECTED EPITHET MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DENOMINATION CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.
- 5** Has the “epithet” been used before for another plant in the denomination class, even as a trade designation, other than for a cultivar which is assigned to the Group concerned? (Art. 30.1)  
**NO: → 7 YES: → 6**
- 6** Has the “epithet” been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)  
**YES: → 37 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 7** Has the “epithet” appeared in a publication that is printed or in similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)  
**YES: → 8 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 8** Was the “epithet” published on or after the starting point for the denomination class concerned? (Art. 18.1)  
**YES: → 9 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER DATE OF PUBLICATION.
- 9** After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)  
**YES: → 10 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED – FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.

- 10** Is the “epithet” based upon an established cultivar epithet?  
**YES: → 34 NO: → 11**
- 11** After 1958, is the “epithet” at least partially in a language other than Latin or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → 12**
- 12** Is the “epithet” taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently re-classified as a Group? (Art. 21.5)  
**YES: → 13 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 13** Before 1959, is the “epithet” one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 14** Is the “epithet” a translation of a Latin form Group epithet? (Art. 32.2)  
**NO: → 15 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. ESTABLISHED LATIN FORM GROUP EPITHETS MAY NOT BE TRANSLATED.
- 15** Is the “epithet” the earliest translation of a non-Latin epithet? (Art. 32.2)  
**YES: → 16 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. NON-LATIN EPITHETS MAY ONLY HAVE ONE TRANSLATION IN ANY LANGUAGE.
- 16** After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.13)  
**NO: → 17 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 17** After 1995, is the “epithet” very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)  
**NO: → 18 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 18** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)  
**NO: → 19 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS ESTABLISHED PRACTICE (THEN → 19)
- 19** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 20 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

- 20** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 21 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 21** After 2004, does the “epithet” consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)  
**NO: → 22 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 22** After 1958, do the words “variety” or “form” appear in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.16)  
**NO: → 23 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 23** After 1995, do any of the words “cultivar”, “grex”, “hybrid”, maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “sport”, “series” and “strain” or the plural of these words, or the words “improved” and “transformed” appear in the “epithet”, in any language? (Art. 21.17)  
**NO: → 24 YES → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 24** After 1995, is the “epithet” likely to exaggerate the merits of the Group? (Art. 21.24)  
**NO: → 25 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 25** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)  
**NO: → 26 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 26** Does the “epithet” contain fractions? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO: → 27 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 27** Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO: → 28 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS TRANSCRIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 28).
- 28** After 1958, is there a description or diagnosis accompanying publication of the “epithet”? (Art. 27.1)  
**YES: → 30 NO: → 29**
- 29** Is there a reference to a previous publication or a description or diagnosis? (Art. 27.1)  
**YES: → 30 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

- 30** Has the “epithet” definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)  
**YES: → 31 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 31** Did the Group for which the “epithet” was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)  
**YES: → 32 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 32** Is the “epithet” against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)  
**NO: → 33 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 33** Was another “epithet”, other than a translation into another language, proposed by the same author for the same Group simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)  
**NO: → 34 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 34** **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED GROUP EPITHET → 35**
- 35** Has the epithet been replaced by a later epithet under the provision of an earlier edition of this Code?  
**NO: → 36 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.
- 36** Is this the earliest established epithet for the Group in the language used for the epithet.  
**YES: → 37 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT UNACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIEST EPITHET IN THAT LANGUAGE.
- 37** **YOU HAVE AN ACCEPTED GROUP EPITHET**

### 3. GREX EPITHETS

(“epithet”, unless otherwise indicated, excludes the word grex)

- 1 Is the “epithet” actually a trademark or does it contain a trademark? (Principle 6)  
**NO: → 2 YES: → STOP** TRADEMARKS ARE NEVER TO BE CONSIDERED AS OR AS PART OF GREX EPITHETS.
- 2 Is the “epithet” another sort of trade designation? (Art. 13)  
**NO: → 3 YES: → STOP** TRADE DESIGNATIONS ARE MARKETING DEVICES USED IN PLACE OF ACCEPTED EPITHETS AND ARE NOT TO BE USED AS PART OF GREX NAMES.
- 3 Has the “epithet” been conserved by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 19)  
**NO: → 4 YES: → 36**
- 4 Has the “epithet” been rejected by the International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants? (Art. 30.3, 31.8)  
**NO: → 5 YES: → STOP** A REJECTED NAME MAY NOT BE USED IN THAT DENOMINATION CLASS: FIND ANOTHER EPITHET.
- 5 After 2008, has the “epithet” been used as a nothospecific epithet for a hybrid of the same parentage? (Art. 23.5)  
**NO: → 6 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 6 Has the “epithet” been used before in the denomination class for any other plant, even as a trade designation? (Art. 30.1)  
**NO: → 8 YES: → 7**
- 7 Has the “epithet” been designated as acceptable by the International Cultivar Registration Authority? (Art. 29.2, 29.3, 30.2)  
**YES: → 36 NO: → 8**
- 8 Has the “epithet” appeared in a publication that is printed or similarly duplicated? (Art. 25.1, 25.2)  
**YES: → 9 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 9 Was the “epithet” published on or after the starting point for the denomination class concerned? (Art. 18.2)  
**YES: → 10 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. FIND A LATER DATE OF PUBLICATION.

- 10** After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)  
**YES: → 11 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED. PUBLICATIONS SINCE 1958 MUST BE DATED. FIND ANOTHER PUBLICATION THAT IS DATED.
- 11** After 1958, is the “epithet” at least partially in a language other than Latin, or is it composed of a Latin word or words current in another language? (Art. 21.11, 21.12)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → 12**
- 12** Is the “epithet” taken from a Latin epithet at the rank of species or below which is established (validly published) and acceptable in conformity with the *International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* for a taxon subsequently reclassified as a grex? (Art. 21.5)  
**YES: → 13 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 13** Before 1959, is the “epithet” one in Latin form published in conformity with the *International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants*? (Art. 21.6)  
**YES: → 14 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 14** After 1995, are there more than 30 characters in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.13)  
**NO: → 15 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 15** After 1995, is the “epithet” very similar to or confusable with another in the same denomination class? (Art. 21.23)  
**NO: → 16 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 16** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain the Latin or common name of the genus or nothogenus to which it is assigned? (Art. 21.20)  
**NO: → 17 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS SUCH USE IS ESTABLISHED PRACTICE (THEN → 17)
- 17** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the Latin name of a genus or nothogenus or other denomination class where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 18 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 18** After 1958, does the “epithet” consist of the common name of a species where such use might lead to confusion? (Art. 21.22)  
**NO: → 19 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 19** After 2004, does the “epithet” consist solely of a single letter or solely of Arabic or Roman numerals or of a single letter or numeral in combination with a punctuation mark? (Art. 21.15)  
**NO: → 20 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.



- 20** After 1958, do the words “variety” or “form” appear in the “epithet”? (Art. 21.16)  
**NO: → 21 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 21** After 1995, do any of the words “cultivar”, “group”, “hybrid”, “maintenance”, “mixture”, “selection”, “sport”, “series” and “strain” or the plural of these words, or the words “improved” or “transformed” appear in the “epithet”, in any language? (Art. 21.17)  
**NO: → 22 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 22** After 1995, is the “epithet” likely to exaggerate the merits of the grex? (Art. 21.24)  
**NO: → 23 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 23** After 1995, does the “epithet” contain inadmissible punctuation marks? (Art. 21.18)  
**NO: → 24 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 24** Does the “epithet” contain fractions? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO: → 25 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 25** Does the “epithet” contain inadmissible symbols? (Art. 21.19)  
**NO: → 26 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED UNLESS  
TRANSCRIPTION OF SYMBOL IS PERMITTED (IF  
SO, TRANSCRIBE SYMBOL AND → 26).
- 26** Is the publication of the “epithet” accompanied by a statement of the accepted names of both parents of the grex? (Art. 27.3)  
**YES: → 29 NO: → 27**
- 27** Are the names of both parents of the grex omitted from the publication of the name? (Art. 27.3)  
**NO: → 28 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 28** If the accepted name of only one parent of the grex is given in the publication of the name, is the other parent at least referred to a genus or nothogenus? (Art. 27.4)  
**YES: → 29 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 29** Has the “epithet” definitely been accepted by the author who published it? (Art. 27.6)  
**YES: → 30 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 30** Did the grex for which the “epithet” was proposed actually exist at the time of publication? (Art. 27.7)  
**YES: → 31 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.

- 31** Is the “epithet” against the wishes of the raiser or breeder? (Art. 31.4)  
**NO: → 32 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 32** Was another “epithet” proposed by the same author for the same grex simultaneously? (Art. 27.8)  
**NO: → 33 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 33** **YOU HAVE AN ESTABLISHED GREX EPITHET → 34**
- 34** Has the epithet been replaced by later epithet under provisions of an earlier edition of the *Code*?  
**NO: → 35 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.
- 35** Is this the earliest established epithet for the grex?  
**YES: → 36 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS UNACCEPTABLE AND USE REPLACEMENT EPITHET.
- 36** **YOU HAVE AN ACCEPTED GREX EPITHET**

#### 4. GRAFT-CHIMAERAS

- 1** For cultivar epithets of a graft-chimaera, → **1** in the filter for cultivar epithets  
For generic names of intergeneric graft-chimaeras → **2**
- 2** Has the “name” appeared in a publication that is printed or similarly duplicated matter? (Art. 25)  
**YES: → 4 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 3** Was the “name” published on or after 1 may 1753? (Art. 18.3)  
**YES: → 4 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 4** After 1958, was the publication dated at least to the year? (Art. 26)  
**YES: → 5 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 5** Is there a statement in the publication of the component genera of the intergeneric graft-chimaera? (Art. 27.3)  
**YES: → 6 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 6** Is the “name” formed from legitimate (“accepted”) generic names? (Art. 27.3)  
**YES: → 7 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED AND USE A NAME FORMED FROM LEGITIMATE GENERIC NAMES.
- 7** Is the “name” formed from part of the generic name of one component connected by a vowel to the full name of the other component? (Art. 24.3)  
**YES: → 8 NO: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 8** Is the “name” the same as a genus or nothogenus validly published under the ICBN? (Art. 24.3)  
**NO: → 9 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ESTABLISHED.
- 9** Is there an earlier established name for the graft-chimaera?  
**NO: → 10 YES: → STOP** REJECT AS NOT ACCEPTABLE AND USE EARLIER ESTABLISHED NAME.
- 10** **YOU HAVE THE ACCEPTED INTERGENERIC NAME FOR THE GRAFT-CHIMAERA.**

## **APPENDIX IX**

### **QUICK GUIDE FOR NEW CULTIVAR NAMES**

Many of the Rules of this *Code* deal with sorting out problems which have arisen in past nomenclature. The following notes are intended as a quick guide to forming new cultivar epithets and should be read by everyone wishing to name a new cultivar.

#### **DO I HAVE A NEW CULTIVAR?**

You have a new cultivar and you wish to name it. First check that you do actually have a cultivar. A single plant is not a cultivar: a cultivar is a group of individual plants which collectively is distinct from any other, which is uniform in its overall appearance and which remains stable in its attributes. Do not attempt to name a cultivar until you have a number of individuals which are uniform and stable. Now convince yourself that your cultivar is really worth naming; there is no point in going through the process of naming your cultivar if it is not sufficiently distinct or an improvement on others.

There are different sorts of cultivar ranging from clones which should be genetically identical to tightly-controlled, seed-raised cultivars such as F<sub>1</sub> hybrids. Article 2 of this *Code* defines some of the different kinds of cultivar.

The only way you can check if it is new is by comparison with existing cultivars. Your new cultivar must be distinguishable from those already in existence.

Once you are satisfied that you do indeed have a new cultivar, decide if you want to give it a cultivar epithet. The epithet is the last part of the full cultivar name and renders the name unique. Cultivar epithets are always written within single quotation marks so that they stand out from the rest of the name.

Remember that cultivar epithets, by their very definition, are available for all to use and that the epithets themselves offer no protection if you wish to obtain intellectual property rights on your new cultivar.

#### **HOW DO I FORM A NEW CULTIVAR NAME?**

The full name of a cultivar will always begin with the botanical name of the genus to which the cultivar belongs. Optionally, the species or hybrid epithet may be included as a second element in the cultivar name, but this is not necessary: inclusion merely provides more information about your cultivar.

Nowadays, new cultivar epithets must generally be in a modern language and they must be unique within the so-called denomination class which is usually the genus. Some groups have special denomination classes and these may be found in Appendix V of this *Code*.

Coining a new and original cultivar epithet is not easy, especially in groups which historically have had hundreds or even thousands of cultivars. Luckily many of these groups have International Cultivar Registration Authorities (ICRAs) who publish Checklists and Registers of epithets which have been used in the past. Check in Appendix I in this *Code* to see if the genus of your cultivar is covered by an ICRA and then consult the ICRA's publications. Each ICRA has a Registrar who will be glad to advise you if your proposed epithet has been used before and whether or not your epithet is acceptable.

There have been many other lists of cultivar epithets produced in the past and a list of some of those is given in Appendix XI of the 1995 *Code*. Most good horticultural and scientific libraries will have copies of these publications for you to check for prior publication or increasingly you will find useful lists on the world wide web.

Composing an epithet requires a bit of thought. An ideal epithet is both easy to spell and pronounce in the various countries in which the cultivar might be distributed. The rules for composing an epithet allow you to use or make up any word or words you want but the epithet will not be allowed as a cultivar epithet if it is likely to cause confusion with an existing epithet in that denomination class. This *Code* governs the reasons why a proposed epithet might not be allowed; disallowed epithets are to be "rejected".

The following is a check list of things to do when choosing your cultivar epithet:

- 1 make sure your proposed epithet is unique in the denomination class
- 2 make sure that your epithet cannot be confused either in spelling or pronunciation with another existing one
- 3 make sure that your epithet could not be interpreted as being likely to exaggerate the merits of the cultivar (i.e. do not use superlatives such as 'Best Ever', 'The Greatest' and 'Tastiest of All')
- 4 make sure that your epithet has no more than 30 characters, excluding spaces and the single quotation marks
- 5 Avoid the use of latin words
- 6 do not use any of the following banned words or their equivalents in any language in your epithet: "hybrid", "cultivar", "grex", "group", "form", "maintenance", "mixture", "selection", "sport", "strain", "series", "variety" (or

- the plural form of these words in any language) or the words “improved” and “transformed”
- 7 do not use fractions or symbols
  - 8 do not use single letters or single numerals, or combinations of a single letter or a single numeral with a punctuation mark
  - 9 do not use any punctuation marks except for the apostrophe, the comma, the hyphen and the full-stop; a maximum of two exclamation marks may be included, but they must not be adjacent
  - 10 make sure your epithet does not contain the Latin, common or vernacular name of the genus to which it is assigned
  - 11 make sure your epithet is not the name of a genus or the common or vernacular name of a species or other denomination class if this would lead to confusion

### **WHAT DO I DO WITH MY NEW NAME?**

Once you have satisfied yourself that your epithet is in an acceptable form, register it with the appropriate ICRA. This will usually cost you little more than the time spent filling in a form and sending it off but will help ensure that the epithet is internationally recognized forever.

The epithet will have to be published in order to be absolutely fixed. You may either publish it yourself, say in your nursery catalogue if you are a nurseryman, or the ICRA concerned will publish it for you in due course if you register the epithet with them. ICRAs, however, are placed under no obligation to publish your epithet within a short period of time and you should realise that your chosen epithet might be used by someone else for a completely different plant unless you take steps to ensure early publication. If someone else, even if in a different part of the world, publishes your chosen epithet for a different cultivar in the same genus, you will have to think of another for your plant.

Publication of your new epithet must be in printed or similarly duplicated matter which is distributed to the general public or at least to botanical, agricultural, forestry or horticultural institutions with libraries. Electronic publication such as on a website or a CD does not establish a new name.

Publications must be dated. A new epithet appearing in a nursery catalogue will not be treated as having been published if that catalogue is undated at least to the year.

Do not publish more than one epithet for the same cultivar in the same publication: if you do this, none will be considered as having been published in that publication. Nor should you seek to replace your original epithet in any later publication.

It may be that you are registering or publishing a new cultivar epithet on behalf of someone else or that you are promoting a new epithet for a cultivar raised by someone else. Check that the originator of the cultivar agrees with the epithet you are promoting and its spelling; if (s)he does not, the epithet may have to be rejected.

When you publish a new cultivar epithet, you must include a description of the cultivar. The longer and more complete the description the better but at least state its obvious characteristics and, if you can, state how it differs from an existing similar cultivar. It is helpful, though not compulsory, to supply an informative illustration of the new cultivar in the publication if expense permits.

Make a statement such as “new cultivar name” after the new epithet so that others may recognise the fact that you have deliberately named it.

### **WHAT ELSE SHOULD I DO?**

Send a copy of your publication to the ICRA and to the main horticultural libraries in your part of the world. If you are feeling generous, send copies to similar libraries in other parts of the world too.

If you can, provide an herbarium specimen (a nomenclatural standard) of the new cultivar to your nearest herbarium which specialises in maintaining nomenclatural standards. A list is provided in Appendix III. This will help ensure that the identity of your cultivar can be confirmed if a query arises in the future and may help resolve disputes if more than one person thinks they have raised the same cultivar. The designation of a standard and its location must also be published, preferably in the same place as the name is established.

Finally, ensure that the name is used by everyone and do not encourage others to coin trade designations or other selling names for your plant. The most effective way to protect a name is to label your plants clearly and unambiguously. Always maintain “your” cultivar epithet within single quotation marks to ensure that the status of your plant is understood.

## APPENDIX X

### TRADE DESIGNATIONS

*Principle 6: The practice of applying trade designations as marketing devices to replace properly established names of taxa of plants is not supported by this Code: such designations are not to be recognised as being accepted names.*

*Art.13.1 A trade designation is not a name regulated under this Code but is a device that is used for marketing a cultivar, Group, or grex in place of its accepted name.*

*Art.13.2 A trade designation is not to be confused with a synonym. For the purposes of this Code a synonym is an established name that is not the accepted name.*

*Art. 13. Note 1 Nationally important established cultivar names that are not the earliest name may be taken up and used as trade designations.*

*Art. 17.1 Trade designations may not be placed within demarcating quotation marks.*

*Art. 17.2 If cited, trade designations must always be accompanied by their accepted names.*

*Art. 17.3 Trade designations should be distinguished typographically from cultivar, Group or grex epithets.*

*Art. 32. Note 1 Notwithstanding Art.32.1 when for marketing reasons a cultivar epithet has been translated into a different language, the translated epithet is to be regarded as a trade designation.*

Other than in the extracts listed above, this *Code* does not formally regulate the formation and use of trade designations. However, bearing in mind that trade designations are widely in use in relation to plant names the following notes are intended to provide guidance to International Cultivar Registration Authorities (ICRAs) and others who need to understand how they might be treated:

(a) In distinguishing a trade designation typographically from an accepted name the trade designation may, for example, be placed in capitals e.g. *Dianthus* FANTASIA is the trade designation for the cultivar with the accepted name *Dianthus* ‘Londaison’. The use of any other typographical device to make this distinction should avoid anything that might cause confusion with indications of cultivar, Group or grex status, so for example the use of single or double quotes is not recommended.



(b) When citing a trade designation together with an accepted name, whilst it is preferable to list the accepted name first, the order in which they are quoted may depend on the circumstances; it is recognized that users of a name may be more familiar with the trade designation. Thus *Dianthus* 'Londaison' FANTASIA or *Dianthus* FANTASIA 'Londaison' can both be used. Placing the second element within brackets is another accepted style of presentation e.g. *Dianthus* 'Londaison' (FANTASIA) or *Dianthus* FANTASIA ('Londaison').

(c) ICRAs should seek to record the use of trade designations and to avoid the use of identical or confusingly similar epithets in the names of cultivars, Groups and grexes. Trade designations however should not be registered by ICRAs since they are not formally regarded as names.

(d) In some circumstances more than one trade designation may have been used in association with an individual cultivar, Group or grex name (see Art.13, Example 1). It is recommended that all such trade designations are recorded by the relevant ICRA.

(e) It is recommended that anyone coining new trade designations should report them to the appropriate ICRA, in association with the accepted name for each plant.

(f) When ICRAs encounter translations of cultivar or grex epithets these should be treated as trade designations and recorded as such. However, ICRAs should not seek to provide a translation for all epithets, only to record those known to have been used. Translations of some Group epithets are permitted (see Art.32.2); these should not be treated as trade designations.

(g) In some circumstances it may be necessary to record the use of the same word or words both as a synonym and as a trade designation for the same plant. This may occur when a name has been established prior to the plant being granted statutory rights (e.g. Plant Breeders' Rights) and when a different name has been used for the same plant in the grant of rights. The latter has to become the accepted name of the plant and the earlier established name a synonym. However, if the synonym is then taken up as a marketing device for that plant it should then to be treated as a trade designation. This treatment applies even if the earlier established name has been registered by an ICRA. Another example is given under Art. 13.2.

(h) Some trade designations may consist of or contain registered trademarks. A registered trademark is one that has been formally accepted by a statutory trademark authority and is usually distinguished by the international symbol ®. The use of this symbol is not compulsory. Registered trademarks are the intellectual property of a person or some corporate body and are therefore not freely available for any person to use; consequently they can not be considered as or as part of names.

(i) Most trademarks are applicable over a restricted class of goods, so thus a trademark registered for use in a class covering machines and machine tools may still be acceptable for use as part of a plant name.

*Art. 8. Note 2 Anyone using a trademark for a cultivar should be aware of the risk of the trademark becoming generic unless an accepted name is also given when marketing the cultivar. The trademark should always be accompanied by an accepted name.*

(j) Whilst it is the responsibility of the trademark holder to police their rights, ICRA's should always treat as trade designations what might appear to be names regulated by this *Code*, but which are or include known registered trademarks. ICRA's should not be seen as a definitive source of information about trademark protection and queries about the application of specific trademarks should be referred to appropriate trademark authorities.

An exception to this is the case in which a statutory registration authority (involving for instance a plant patent or plant breeders' right) has granted a right using a denomination which is or includes a registered trademark which belongs to the applicant. In such cases the denomination used in the grant of rights has to remain as the accepted name of the plant.

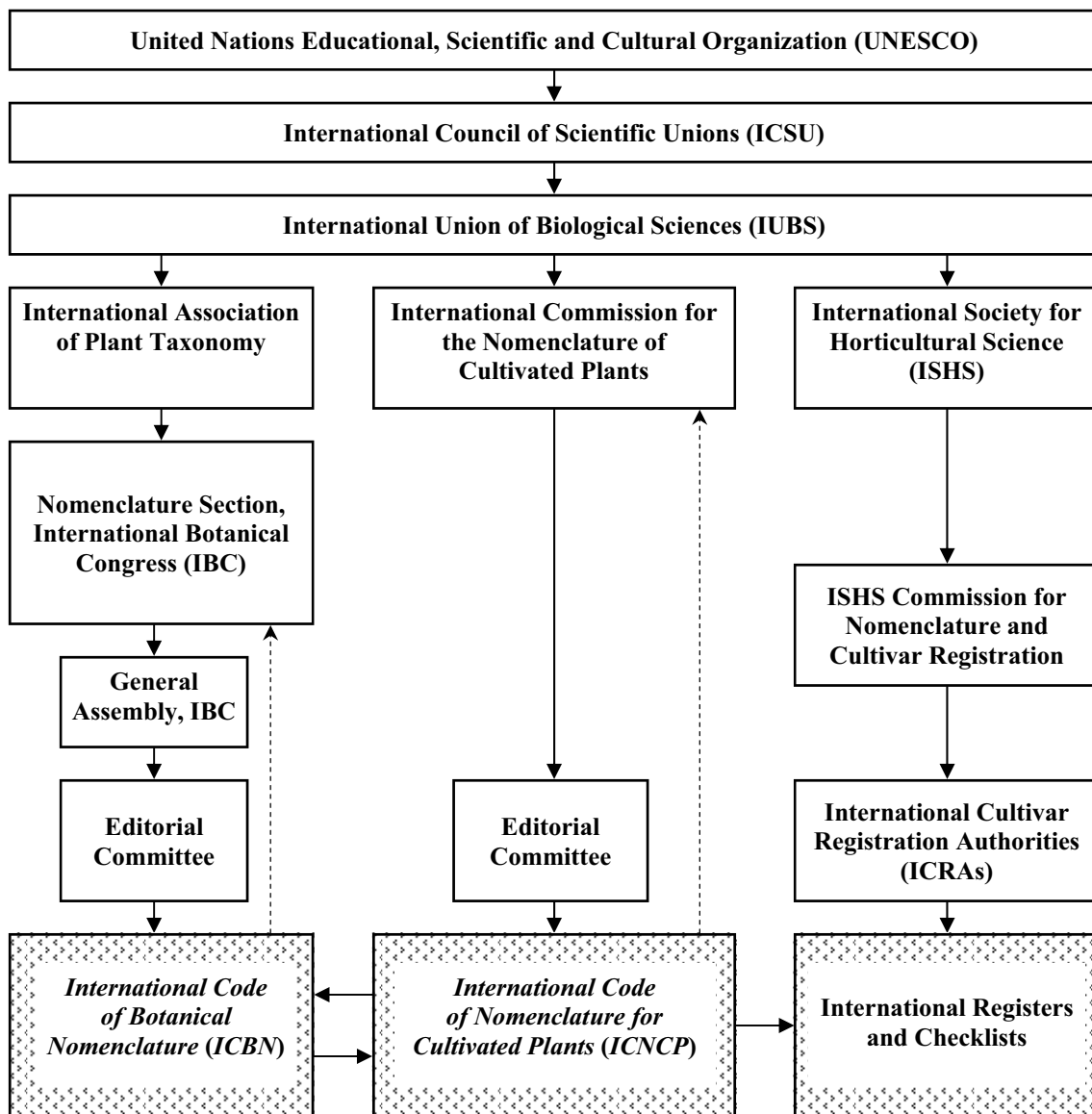
(k) In some cases trademarks may be claimed but are not registered with a national statutory trademark authority. These may be seen quoted with the symbol <sup>TM</sup>. In many countries this sort of mark confers little or no enforceable protection over the use of the mark, but advice needs to be sought in individual countries as in the USA, for example, <sup>TM</sup> marks may be associated with some degree of local protection.

(l) It may be necessary on rare occasions for an ICRA to record a plant as only having a trade designation and no accepted name. This will arise when what is used to market the plant is, or contains, a registered trademark and there is no alternative available to be treated as the cultivar name.

## APPENDIX XI

## FLOW CHART OF NOMENCLATURAL BODIES AND PROCESSES

This chart demonstrates the relationships between the various international bodies that govern the international nomenclature of plants, resulting in the provision of a correct nomenclature.



## GLOSSARY

This glossary provides succinct meanings of terms used in this *Code*, and also provides reference for other terms which may be used in discussions on the nomenclature of cultivated plants.

For a fuller glossary of terms used in nomenclature generally, the user is referred to Hawksworth, D. L. (ed.), *A draft glossary of terms used in bionomenclature*, IUBS Monograph No 9, published by the International Union of Biological Sciences, Paris, 1994.

**abbreviation**

a shortening of a word or words using selected letters. See also: **acronym**, **contraction**, and **initialism**

**abstracting journal**

one that publishes summaries or abstracts of articles published elsewhere.

**accent**

a mark associated with a letter, which indicates the way in which that letter is to be pronounced. It is also used in some languages to indicate where the stress (or emphasis) falls in a word.

**accepted name**

the earliest name for a cultivar, Group, grex, or intergeneric graft-chimaera that must be adopted except in specified circumstances (*ICNCP Art. 11.1*).

**acronym**

a pronounceable abbreviation of a phrase consisting of the initial letters of several words.

**addition sign (+)**

in nomenclature, the symbol used to indicate a graft-chimaera.

**admissible name**

an unpublished name that is in a form that would permit it to be established.

**agamospermy**

for the process by which some plants produce viable seeds without fertilization and whose progeny is, therefore, usually genetically uniform and identical to the parent.

**agriculture**

the non-domestic cultivation of food, fodder, and industrial crops. See also: **forestry**

**allopolyploid**

a polyploid with chromosome sets derived from different species.

**alternative terminology**

use of different terms for the same concept.

**apomict**

a plant habitually reproducing by means of apomixis.

**apomixis**

the process by which some plants reproduce by asexual means, e.g. by reproducing vegetatively or by producing viable progeny without fertilization and is therefore usually genetically uniform.

**appropriate epithet**

one which describes some aspect of the plant so named, for example its characters, provenance, or history.

**arbitrary epithet**

one formed without regard to etymology or other formal derivation, and does not relate to the plant so named.

**Article**

a collection of associated rules and Recommendations in a *Code*.

**artificial classification**

one proposed solely for ease of use and which does not aim to demonstrate true relatedness.

**artificial selection**

the process of intentional or unintentional modification of a species through human actions that encourage the selection of certain characters over others.

**asexual propagation**

propagation without fertilization, e.g. agamospermy, cuttings, division, meristem culture, and micropropagation.

**assignee**

one who is appointed by a person or organization to act on their behalf.

**authentic specimen**

one that has been verified by a raiser or breeder, introducer or author of a name as being representative of the taxon to which the name is assigned.

**author**

the person to whom a name or publication is attributed.

**author abbreviation**

an abbreviation of the name of an author used in an author citation.

**author citation**

a statement of the name(s) of the author(s) responsible for a publication or the establishment of a name.

**autograph**

a text written by hand and not reproduced by machine.

**autopolyploid**

a polyploid with chromosome sets derived from a single species or individual.

**back-cross**

the cross of a hybrid with one of its own parents.

**basionym**

the original name of a genus or epithet in the name of a taxon of a lower rank than genus published in a new combination (cf. *ICBN Art. 33.4*).

**bigeneric hybrid**

the result of a cross between individuals classified in different genera.

**binary combination**

the scientific name of a species consisting of two words, the first word being the name of the genus to which that species belongs and the second being the epithet given to that species to distinguish it from others in the same genus (cf. *ICBN Art 23.1*).

binary name – see: **binary combination**

binomen – see: **binary combination**

binomial – see: **binary combination**

**blend**

a novel word derived from combining parts of other words.

**bonsai**

the art of dwarfing trees and other plants in pots.

Botanical Code – see: **International Code of Botanical Nomenclature**

botanical Latin – see: **Latin**

botanical name – see: **scientific name**

**brackets**

a pair of marks such as round brackets (...) (in North America often called parentheses), square brackets [...], or curly brackets {...} used for enclosing words or numbers so as to separate them from their context.

**breeder**

the person or organization developing new or improved groups of plants by selection, hybridization, and similar methods.

**budwood**

shoots of scion material from which buds are obtained for budding.

**category**

a division in a system of classification. In this *Code* they are cultivar, Group and grex.

**character**

a trait, property, quality or attribute (morphological, physiological, anatomical, cytological or biochemical) that may be observed or quantified and that may serve to distinguish one taxon from another. A statement of the origin (parentage) of the taxon is not to be regarded as a character.

**characteristic**

the possession of a distinctive character (noun).

**checklist**

a publication listing all names, for a defined taxon or geographical area irrespective of nomenclatural status, that have been published or made known in the literature, together with relevant bibliographic and/or taxonomic data.

**chimaera**

an individual composed of two or more genetically different tissues in intimate association (*ICNCP Art. 2.10*).

**circumscribe**

to make a circumscription.

**circumscription**

a statement of the diagnostic limits of a taxon.

**classification**

the systematic grouping of items; a system in which items may be grouped.

**clone**

two or more individuals, originally derived from one plant by asexual propagation, which remain genetically identical (*ICNCP Art. 2.5*).

**Code**

one of the international codes of nomenclature, generally referring to its most recent edition.

**code-name**

an epithet without evident meaning that is made up of a sequence of connected letters and/or numerals.

**co-extension**

a situation when all plants represented by one name are also represented by another name.

**collective name**

the single designation covering all the progeny of a particular hybrid.

**colour mixture**

seed from field-grown, open-pollinated lines which may or may not be mixed to a particular formula.

**combination**

the name of a taxon below the rank of genus, consisting of the genus name and species epithet, possibly followed by one or more epithets at infraspecific ranks (cf. *ICBN Art. 6.7*).

**Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration**

a body of the International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS) that deals with matters connected with plant naming and that promotes the registration of names of cultivated plants.

commercial synonym – see: **trade designation**

**common name**

one widely or locally used in any language in place of a scientific name.

**competing name**

one of those taken into consideration in determining the correct or accepted name for a taxon.

**condensed formula**

the name of a hybrid genus or graft-chimaeral genus constructed from parts of the names of the parent genera involved (cf. *ICBN Art. H.6.2*).

**congeneric**

belonging to the same genus.

**connecting vowel**

one that joins different word elements.

**conserved name**

one that, although contrary to the Rules of a *Code*, is declared to be the accepted name, by ruling of a body responsible for such decisions (*ICNCP Art. 12.1, Appendix VI & cf. ICBN Art. 14.4*).

**conspecific**

belonging to the same species.

**contraction**

an abbreviation that shortens a word by removing one or more of its middle letters.

**correct name**

the legitimate name which must be adopted under *ICBN Art. 6.6* for a taxon at the rank of family and below with a particular circumscription, position and rank.

**covariant**

a plant whose characters are maintained solely by regular practices of cultivation such as by pruning or training (*ICNCP Art. 2.23*).

**cross**

to hybridize one plant with another (verb); the product of hybridization (noun).

**cryptic variety**

a cultivated plant with characters that do not readily separate it taxonomically from an existing cultivar.

cultigen – see: **cultivated plant**

**cultivar**

an assemblage of plants that has been selected for a particular character or combination of characters and that is clearly distinct, uniform, and stable in these characters and that when propagated by appropriate means retains those characters (*ICNCP Art. 2.3*).

cultivar class – see: **denomination class**

**cultivar epithet**

the defining part of a name that denotes a cultivar, usually following a genus name or a binary combination or the common name equivalent.

cultivariant – see: **topophysic plant**

**cultivated plant**

deliberately selected plants that may have arisen by intentional or accidental hybridisation in cultivation, by selection from existing cultivated stocks, or from variants within wild populations that are maintained as recognisable entities solely by continued propagation. These are sometimes referred to as cultigens.

Cultivated Plant Code – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants**

**culton** (plural: *culta*)

a systematic group of cultivated plants which is based upon one or more user criteria; a word equivalent to taxon but used in the context of a different classification philosophy that for taxa in general: names of *culta* are solely governed by the *ICNCP*.



**cyclophysic cultivar**

a clone with the same genotype as the original parent plant but differing in its phenotype, being originally propagated from specific tissue from a phase in the plant's life cycle (*ICNCP Art. 2.7*).

**cytological characters**

the characteristics within the cellular structure of an organism.

**date of a name**

of a cultivar, Group, grex, or the generic name of an intergeneric graft chimaera is that of its establishment (*ICNCP Art. 9.1*).

**date of publication**

the actual time (day, month and year, or month and year, or at least the year), on which printed matter became available to the general public or to botanical libraries.

denomination – see: **variety denomination**

**denomination class** (cultivar class)

the assemblage of taxa in which cultivar, Group and grex epithets may not be duplicated except in special circumstances (*ICNCP Art. 6.1*). This is not recognized as a formal category under the *ICBN*.

**description**

a statement of the characters of a particular taxon; an expanded diagnosis.

**descriptor**

a word or phrase attached to the name of a taxon which is used to indicate an element such as flower colour.

**determine**

to establish the identity of an entity.

**determination**

an identification.

**determination slip**

a piece of paper attached to a specimen on which is written the determination, along with details of who made the determination, the date of determination, and any other notes that may be made at the time.

**diacritical sign**

a mark such as an accent or diaeresis connected with a letter, used to indicate correct pronunciation.

**diaeresis**

a diacritical sign (¨) placed over one of two consecutive vowels to indicate that they are to be pronounced separately when they might otherwise be pronounced as one sound.

**diagnosis** (plural: diagnoses)

a statement which, in the opinion of its author, distinguishes a taxon from others.

**diagnostic characters**

the features that permit one to assign a plant to a particular taxon.

**differential character**

a distinguishing or diagnostic character.

**disagreeable epithet**

one whose use in a certain culture might cause offence.

**distinct**

consistently different in one or more characters so as to permit repeated recognition.

**domestication**

the adaptation of plants (and animals) to existence in close association with humans or in habitats affected by human activity.

**double-cross**

the repeatable crossing of two F<sub>1</sub> hybrids.

**duplicate**

of a specimen, part of a single gathering from a single plant or local population made by a collector at one time.

**DUS test**

the criteria of **D**istinctness, **U**niformity and **S**tability by which a new cultivar is examined for statutory purposes such as for the granting of Plant Breeders' Rights or the addition to a National List.

**ephemeral**

of publications, those not intended for long-term reference, such as newspapers and advertisements which usually become obsolete soon after they are issued.

**epithet**

the final word or combination of words in a name that denotes an individual taxon. See also:

**cultivar epithet****epitype**

the specimen or illustration selected to serve as interpretative type when the holotype, lectotype or previously designated neotype, or all original material associated with a validly published name, is demonstrably ambiguous and cannot be critically identified for purposes of the precise application of the name of a taxon (*ICBN Art. 9.7*).

**equivalent epithet**

one that is a permitted translation, transliteration, or transcription of an existing epithet or one that is taken to be identical even though there may be minor differences due to optional use of accents, diacritical signs, and other top-line punctuation (cf. *ICNCP Art. 35.9*).

**essentially derived variety**

a cultivar which whilst clearly distinguishable retains the essential characteristics of the cultivar from which it is derived. Essentially derived cultivars may arise, for example, by mutation, selection or genetic engineering.

**established name**

one that meets the criteria laid out in the *ICNCP*.

**establishment**

a prime principle of nomenclature whereby certain criteria must have been fulfilled before an epithet is considered acceptable for use (cf. *ICNCP Art. 27*).

**etymology**

the original linguistic derivation of a word.

## Glossary

**extant**

of a taxon, having living representatives.

**extinct**

of a taxon, having no living representatives.

**FAO**

the initials for the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.

**F<sub>1</sub> hybrid (single cross)**

a plant breeding term for the result of a repeatable single cross between two pure-bred lines (*ICNCP Art. 2.16*).

**F<sub>2</sub> hybrid**

a plant breeding term for the result of self-pollination within a population of an F<sub>1</sub> hybrid.

**family**

the principal category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between order and genus (cf. *ICBN Art. 3.1*).

**fancy epithet**

an epithet written in a language other than Latin.

**forestry**

the non-domestic cultivation of woody plants as crops.

**form (*forma*)**

the category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy below the rank of variety (cf. *ICBN Art. 4.1*).

**formula mixture**

a seed mixture made from known components to a pre-determined formula for a defined market.

**gender**

a grammatical characteristic of nouns in some languages that may determine the way in which they, and adjectives, articles and pronouns applied to them, are inflected; in Latin, Greek and many modern languages there are three genders; masculine, feminine and neuter.

**gene bank**

a place where genetic material is stored, usually as seed, and/or plant material, and conserved for future use.

**gene pool**

the range of genetic variation found in a population.

**generic (taxonomic)**

pertaining to a genus.

**generic (trademark)**

the names of commercial products which are not protected by legislation or by a registered trademark from uncontrolled use.

**generic designation**

a name referring to any multiplicity of objects having one or more properties in common and that distinguishes it from other groups of similar objects; a genus name.

**generic name**

the name of a genus.

**genetically modified organism (GMO)**

an organism with new characters following the deliberate implantation of alien genetic material.

**genotype**

the genetic make-up of an individual or population.

**genus**

a category in the nomenclatural hierarchy between family and species.

GMO – see: **genetically modified organism**

**graft-chimaera**

a plant consisting of tissues from two or more different taxa in intimate association, effected by grafting (*ICNCP Art. 2.11 & 5.1*).

graft hybrid – see: **graft-chimaera**

**grafting**

the (usually deliberate) fusion of tissue from two or more different plants.

greges – see: **grex**

**grex** (plural: grexes or greges in classical Latin)

a formal category used in orchid nomenclature and applied to the progeny of an artificial cross from specified parents at species or Grex level (*ICNCP Art.4*).

**group**

to assemble a number of items together (verb); an informal taxon not recognized in the *ICBN* (noun).

**Group**

a formal category denoting an assemblage of cultivars, individual plants, or assemblages of plants on the basis of defined similarity (*ICNCP Art. 3.1*).

**hand-pollination**

a controlled act of pollination that should exclude the possibility of open-pollination.

**handwriting**

the immediate product of a person's writing.

**Hangeul**

the Korean phonetic writing system.

Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an – see: **Pinyin**

**Hanzi**

Chinese characters used in the Chinese writing system.

**Hepburn**

a widely-used standard system for the Romanization of Japanese.

**herbarium** (plural: herbaria)

a collection of botanical specimens; the housing for such specimens.

**herbarium specimen**

a (usually dried) botanical specimen kept in a herbarium.

**hierarchy**

the categories of taxa arranged in order according to their rank. Under the *ICBN* a lower taxon cannot belong to more than one taxon in the rank above; however, the *ICNCP* does allow for the inclusion of a cultivar in more than one Group in contrast to the principle of strict inclusivity enshrined in the *ICBN*.

**Hiragana**

one of the Japanese systems of syllabic writing using phonograms.

**holotype**

the one specimen or illustration used by the author, or designated by the author, as the nomenclatural type of a name of a species or infraspecific taxon. As long as the holotype is extant, it fixes the application of the name concerned (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.1*).

**homonym**

one of two or more names or epithets spelled, or deemed to be spelled, exactly like another name or epithet, but which is applied to a different taxon of the same rank.

**horticulture**

the cultivation of ornamental, fruit and vegetable plants.

**hybrid**

the result of a cross between different plants or taxa.

**hybrid formula**

the names of the parent taxa of a hybrid linked with a multiplication sign.

**hyphen**

a mark (-) used to link together two or more words so as to act as a single word.

IAPT – see: **International Association for Plant Taxonomy**

*ICBN* – see: **International Code of Botanical Nomenclature**

*ICNCP* – see: **International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants**

ICRA – see: **International Cultivar Registration Authority**

**identification**

the matching of a plant or specimen with an existing taxon.

**ideotype**

the conceptual ideal or archetype of a Series as used in the seed industry.

**illegitimate name**

under the *ICBN*, a name that is to be rejected (unless specifically conserved) as a later homonym or as being nomenclaturally superfluous when published (cf. *ICBN Art. 52.1*).

**inappropriate name**

a name with unsuitable etymology but which may not be rejected on that account.

**inbreeding**

the production of offspring between closely related parents leading to a high degree of similarity; self-fertilization is the most intense form of inbreeding.

**indelible autograph**

handwritten material reproduced by some mechanical or graphic process such as lithography, offset, or metallic etching.

**indigen**

a species believed to originate in a wild habitat.

**infrageneric**

pertaining to any taxon below the rank of genus.

**infraspecific**

pertaining to any taxon below the rank of species.

**initialism**

an abbreviation of a phrase consisting of the initial letter of each word in the phrase, distinguishable from an acronym in that it is not pronounced as a single word.

**International Association for Plant Taxonomy (IAPT)**

an organization established to encourage and support all aspects of plant systematics and which is charged with preparing the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature.

***International Code of Botanical Nomenclature* (Botanical Code or *ICBN*)**

the set of international rules that provides for the formation and use of the scientific names in Latin of organisms treated as being plants.

***International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants* (Cultivated Plant Code or *ICNCP*)**

the set of international rules that provides for the formation and use of the scientific names of cultivated plants using either Latin or fancy epithets.

**International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants**

a body promoted by the International Union of Biological Sciences (IUBS) that formulates the International Code of Nomenclature for Cultivated Plants (*ICNCP*).

**International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA)**

an organization appointed by the ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration to be responsible for registering cultivar, Group and grex names within defined taxa.

**International Registrar**

the person appointed by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA) to carry out registration activity on its behalf.

**International Society for Horticultural Science (ISHS)**

the organization (a scientific member of the International Union of Biological Sciences) established to promote the science of horticulture.

**International Union of Biological Sciences (IUBS)**

an organization promoted by UNESCO to promote all disciplines within life sciences.

**interstem**

a piece of tissue that is from a different taxon to that of the rootstock and the scion which is inserted between them to enable the scion to be grown on the rootstock. It is also known as an interstock.

**introducer**

of a cultivar, the person or organization who first distributes a cultivar.

ISHS – see: **International Society for Horticultural Science**

**ISO**

the initials of the International Organization for Standardization.

**isosyntype**

a duplicate of a syntype (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.10*).

**isotype**

any duplicate of a holotype: it is always a specimen (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.3*).

**italics**

the printer's slanting typeface often used to distinguish scientific names when used in a formal taxonomic sense.

IUBS – see: **International Union of Biological Sciences**

**Kanji**

the Chinese characters adapted and used in the Japanese writing system.

**journal**

a serial publication issued at regular intervals.

**Katakana**

one of the Japanese systems of syllabic writing using phonograms.

**Latin** (botanical Latin)

the language derived from Renaissance Latin and other ancient languages which is used for the international communication of plant names and other associated descriptive information.

**lectotype**

a specimen or illustration selected as the nomenclatural type when no holotype was indicated at the time of publication, or for as long as the holotype is missing, or if the holotype is found to belong to more than one taxon (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.2*).

**legitimate name**

applied in the *ICBN* to names that are in accordance with the rules of nomenclature, i.e., those not defined as illegitimate (cf. *ICBN Art. 6.5*).

**ligature**

the typographical union of two letters of the alphabet.

**line**

a plant breeding term used to describe plants resulting from repeated self-fertilization or inbreeding (*ICNCP Art. 2.14*).

**logotype** (logo)

a graphical device that distinguishes the goods or services of one organization from those of others.

**lumping**

to treat as members of a single taxon elements which have been previously considered as belonging to more than one such unit.

**macron** (overscore)

the diacritical sign ( ¯ ) sometimes used above vowels to indicate that they should be pronounced long.

**maintainer**

one who is responsible for the continuing existence of a maintenance.

**maintenance**

the product of the regeneration of a cultivar, either seed propagated or vegetatively propagated, which is representative of that cultivar (i.e. is true to type) and is sufficiently uniform, both in terms of general variability and the number of off-types.

**manuscript**

handwritten or typewritten material existing in only one or a few copies; writing in which each letter is placed on paper in sequence by hand, whether manually or mechanically, without any subsequent multiplication.

**microfiche**

a reproduction, much reduced in size, of many pages copied onto single photographic film sheets.

**microfilm**

a copy of a published work or manuscript, usually much reduced in size, onto a continuous strip of transparent photographic material.

**microform**

a term including microfiche and microfilm.

**misapplied name**

a plant name that has been incorrectly applied.

**modern language**

one currently in use.

**morphological characters**

the physical characters of a plant.

**multiline**

a plant breeding term used to describe a cultivar that is made up of several closely related lines (*ICNCP Art. 2.15*).

**multiplication sign** (×)

in nomenclature, the symbol used to indicate a hybrid.

**mutant**

an individual produced as a result of mutation; the phenotypic expression of a mutant.

**mutation**

a spontaneous or engineered change in the genotype which may alter the phenotype.

**name**

in the sense of a *Code*, one that is established or validly published under the rules whether or not it is an accepted or correct name. See also: **epithet**

name-bearing type – see: **nomenclatural type**



**neotype**

a specimen or illustration selected to serve as the nomenclatural type for as long as all of the material on which the name of the taxon was based is missing. (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.6*).

**nomenclator**

an authoritative catalogue or other listing of names comprising correct or accepted names and their synonyms; one who compiles such a catalogue or list.

**nomenclatural**

relating to nomenclature.

**nomenclatural hierarchy**

the categories of taxa arranged in order according to their rank as defined by some codes of nomenclature.

**nomenclatural standard**

a specimen or other device to which the name of a cultivar or Group is permanently attached.

**nomenclatural type (type)**

under the *ICBN* that element to which the name of a taxon is permanently attached, whether as a correct name or as a synonym, and which fixes the application of a name. The nomenclatural type is not necessarily the most typical or representative element of a taxon (cf. *ICBN Art. 7.2*).

**nomenclature**

a system of names and provisions for their formation and use.

**nominant**

one who invents or coins a name.

**non-statutory registration**

approval and listing of plant names by any organization, agency, or individual entrusted with this duty. See also: **ICRA**.

**nothogenus**

a name at generic level for a hybrid between two or more species in different genera, customarily preceded by a multiplication sign (×).

**nothospecies**

a name at species level for a hybrid between two or more species, customarily preceded by a multiplication sign (×).

**off-type**

a plant showing an atypical phenotype or one that differs from an ideotype.

**original spelling**

the spelling employed when a name was established.

**orthographical error**

an unintentional spelling error.

**orthographical variant**

an alternative and usually incorrect spelling of a word. See also: **equivalent name**

**orthography**

correct spelling.

**out-crossing**

hybridization between different populations of plants which may extend their original gene pools and thus alter their original characters.

overscore – see: **macron**

**paratype**

a specimen cited in the protologue that is neither the holotype nor an isotype, nor one of the syntypes if two or more specimens were simultaneously designated as types (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.5*).

**parenthesis** (plural: parentheses)

a word, phrase, or sentence inserted into a passage of text to which it is not grammatically essential and usually typographically marked off by brackets, dashes or commas.

**parentheses**

round brackets (...) used for indicating a parenthetical word, phrase, or sentence.

**patronymic**

of an epithet, one involving a patronymic prefix e.g., Belgian "Van", Dutch "van", Irish "O", Scottish "Mac", "Mc", and "M'" or suffix e.g., Icelandic "-dottir", Russian "-vitch", Danish "-sen", English and Scandinavian "-son".

**pentaploid**

a polyploid with five sets of chromosomes.

**periodical**

a publication issued at intervals.

**phase**

a distinct stage in the growth cycle of a plant.

**phenotype**

the sum total of all the characteristics of an individual plant; the physical expression of the genotype.

**phenotypic**

pertaining to the phenotype.

**phonogram**

a character or symbol representing a spoken sound.

**physiological characters**

the characters related to functional mechanisms of a plant such as flowering induction.

**Pinyin** (Hanyu Pinyin Fang'an; Hanyu Pinyin)

the international standard for transcription of Chinese characters (**Hanzi**, q.v.) into a Roman script.

**Plant Breeders' Rights**

PBR, also known as Plant Variety Rights (PVR), is an intellectual property right granted to the breeder of a new variety of plant.

**plant patent**

a grant of right, available in certain countries, which provides a means of control over a new plant's propagation and sale for a given period.

Plant Variety Rights – see: **Plant Breeders' Rights**

**pollination**

the act of transferring pollen from the male part of a flower to the female part of a flower.

**polyploid**

having more than two sets of chromosomes.

**polymorph**

a taxon with many variants.

**polymorphic**

with many forms.

**population**

an assemblage of individual plants of one taxon.

precedence – see: **priority**

**prefix**

a letter or group of letters attached before the main part of a word.

**pre-Linnaean**

a name or work published before the starting point of plant nomenclature (Linnaeus's *Species Plantarum*, 1 May 1753).

**preprint**

the publication of a work, often in a condensed form, before its intended full publication.

**Principle**

in a *Code*, a fundamental precept which the Articles are designed to satisfy.

**printed matter**

text or illustrations mechanically reproduced by printing in considerable quantities and in intentionally permanent form.

**printing**

a process for producing identical copies by transferring an image of text or illustrations in ink from a prepared surface.

**priority**

a prime principle of nomenclature whereby the earliest established name takes precedence over later names for the same taxon at a particular rank.

**protologue**

everything published in connection with a name upon its first publication.

**provenance**

the known geographic origin of plants or seed, used mainly by foresters to describe worthwhile selections from indigenous populations.

**provisional name**

one that is not established but is proposed in anticipation of the recognition of a taxon with a particular circumscription, position, or rank. See also: **reserved name**

**publication**

a principle of nomenclature in a *Code* whereby certain rules must have been fulfilled before establishment is assessed, usually achieved by the distribution of dated printed matter, so as to make it available to the community; the act or process of distributing printed matter through sale, exchange or gift into the public domain.

**publish**

to issue a publication; to make public in such work any names or other nomenclatural acts.

**published**

of a name, one that fulfils the requirements of publication.

**publishing author**

the author who is principally responsible for a contribution published in a book, periodical, etc., and to whom included names or nomenclatural acts are to be attributed.

**quotation marks**

marks used to enclose one or more words: double quotation marks may be used to indicate quoted passages from one text in another, to indicate original spellings or names that are not established (validly published); single quotation marks are placed around the epithet of a cultivar name.

**rank**

the relative position of a category within the nomenclatural hierarchy.

**Recommendations**

in this *Code*, procedures that one is strongly encouraged to follow.

**Register**

a published list of names that have been registered with an ICRA or deemed to have been registered by an ICRA.

**registered trademark**

a trademark that has been formally accepted by a statutory trademark authority, distinguished by the international symbol ®.

**registration**

the act of recording a new name or epithet with a registration authority. See also: **non-statutory registration** and **statutory registration**

**reject**

to set aside a name of a taxon in favour of another.

**rejected name**

one that is not to be used either as a result of failure to comply with certain Rules (c.f. *ICNCP Art. 31.1*) or by ruling of the International Commission for Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants and formally listed in *ICNCP Appendix VI*.

**replacement name**

one published to replace an older name that is contrary to the *ICBN* and for which no other name exists; the replacement or 'new name' is typified by the same material as the older name.

**reserved name**

one that has not been established but that may have been recorded by an International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA) as likely to become duly registered. Such names have no status under rules of nomenclature.

## *Glossary*

### **retroactive**

active back in time; nomenclaturally, unless expressly stated, a provision in a *Code* is operational regardless of when it became part of that *Code*, and applies equally to any and all names proposed after the accepted date at which establishment (valid publication) for a particular taxon begins.

rogue – see: **off-type**

### **roguing**

the removal of living off-types from a crop.

### **Romaji**

a system of Romanized spelling for the Japanese language.

### **Roman**

the printers' font that is not italics.

### **Roman alphabet**

the characters originally derived from Latin used for writing words in most Western cultures.

### **Romanization**

the conversion of characters, signs or letters of a non-Roman writing system into a Roman script.

### **Roman script**

a writing system using the Roman alphabet.

### **rootstock**

the living material upon which a scion is grafted.

### **Rules**

in a *Code*, regulations which must be followed.

### **scientific name**

the name of a taxon formed and maintained under the rules of the international codes of nomenclature.

### **scion**

the vegetative bud or shoot containing buds that is used for grafting.

### **seed bank**

a place where seed is held for safe keeping. See also: **gene bank**

### **selection**

a plant or assemblage of plants that has been isolated from a cultivar on the basis of a minor differences in characters.

### **self-pollination**

the transference of pollen from the male part of a flower to the female part of a flower on the same plant.

selling name – see: **trade designation**

### ***sensu lato***

used to mean "in a broad sense".

### ***sensu stricto***

used to mean "in a narrow sense".

**separate**

a part of a periodical or other work, printed separately from the regular issue of the main work, and usually intended for private distribution by the authors; a reprint.

**serial**

a publication issued at regular or irregular intervals with no scheduled termination.

**Series**

a term used in seed-marketing to denote a number of cultivars based on a certain ideotype and differing from each other usually only in one character, normally flower colour.

**series**

a category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between the rank of genus and species (cf. *ICBN* Art. 4.1).

**Series mixture**

a term used in seed-marketing to denote a mixture of cultivars from a series.

**sexual propagation**

in plants, the propagation by means of seed resulting from fertilization.

S<sub>1</sub> Hybrid – see: **synthetic hybrid**

**silviculture**

the science of forestry and the cultivation of woodlands for commercial purposes.

**simultaneous publication**

the publication of two or more names for a single taxon in the same work, usually by the same author.

single cross – see: **F<sub>1</sub> Hybrid**

**species** (*species*)

the basic category in the nomenclatural hierarchy.

**species name**

formed from the combination of a generic name and a specific epithet.

**specimen**

a plant, or part of a plant, gathered, preserved or cultivated for scientific study.

**spelling**

the means of rendering words or names in writing with letters.

**split**

the division of a taxon into two or more taxa.

**sport**

an apparent mutation which has occurred on part of a plant.

**stability**

a state in which change is uncommon; in nomenclature, the maintenance of names which are in use.

**stable**

a condition in which the relevant characteristics of a taxon remain unchanged.

Standard: – see: **nomenclatural standard**

**standard portfolio**

the arrangement by which a nomenclatural standard and any allied material relating to it are to be kept together.

**starting point**

the date on which establishment of names in a particular taxon begins.

**statutory epithet**

an epithet recognized and listed by a statutory plant registration authority.

**statutory plant registration authority (SPRA)**

an organization established by legal enactment of a particular country or by a legal treaty between countries.

**statutory registration**

approval and listing by a statutory plant registration authority.

**strain**

a confused term having several meanings; in cultivated plant nomenclature: often referring to a seed-raised cryptic variety. See also: **maintenance** and **selection**

**subspecies** (*subspecies*)

the category in the nomenclatural hierarchy between species (*species*) and variety (*varietas*).

**superfluous**

in the *ICBN* a name which has been validly published and includes the type of a valid and legitimate previously published name that should be used; in cultivated plants a later synonym.

**suffix**

a letter or group of letters added after the stem of a word.

**symbol**

a written character or mark used to represent something.

**synonym**

an established (validly published) name for a particular taxon that is not the accepted (correct) name (*ICNCP Art. 13.2* & *ICBN Art. 6.6*).

**synonymy**

a list of names considered to apply to a given taxon other than its accepted name.

**synthetic hybrid**

a plant-breeding term for the result of open pollination within a number of defined, controlled lines.

**syntype**

any specimen cited in the protologue when no holotype was designated, or any one of two or more specimens simultaneously designated as types (cf. *ICBN Art. 9.4*).

**tautonym**

a species or cultivar epithet that repeats the name of the genus to which it is assigned: not acceptable under the *ICBN* (*Art. 23.4*) or *ICNCP* (*Art. 21.22*).

**taxon** (plural: taxa)

a group into which a number of similar entities may be classified.

**Taxon**

the official journal of the International Association for Plant Taxonomy.

**taxonomic category**

a unique term for a subdivision in a hierarchical system (q.v. rank).

taxonomic group – see: **taxon**

taxonomic unit – see: **taxon**

**teratological plant**

a deformed or otherwise grossly abnormal plant.

**teratology**

the study of abnormalities or monstrosities.

**termination**

(grammatical) an inflection; the part of a word added to a Greek or Latin stem when the word is inflected.

**tetraploid**

a polyploid with four sets of chromosomes.

**tone mark**

in Pinyin of the Chinese language this is a mark added to a vowel in a syllable to indicate the pitch of the syllable in pronunciation. The marks resemble European diacritics but serve a different function.

**top-line punctuation**

the use of apostrophes and accents and other diacritical signs in association with words.

**topophytic cultivar**

a clone with the same genotype as its original parent plant but differing in its phenotype due to it being originally asexually propagated from specific tissue on the parent plant (*ICNCP Art. 2.6*).

**topovariant**

a distinguishable group of plants grown from seed from a given provenance (*ICNCP Art. 2.13*).

**trade designation**

a device that is used to market a plant when the original name is considered unsuitable for marketing purposes (*ICNCP Art. 13.1*).

**trademark (™)**

any sign, usually made from words, letters, numbers, or other devices such as logotypes, that individualizes the goods of a given enterprise and distinguishes them from the goods of its competitors. See also: **registered trademark**

trade name – see: **trade designation**

**translation**

the rendering of words of one language in another language.

**transliteration**

the rendering of words in one alphabetic script to another alphabetic script.



**transcription**

to copy verbatim from one written work to another; the rendering in written form of sounds of human speech, especially of languages employing non-alphabetic or phonetic characters.

transformed plant – see: **genetically modified plant**

trinomen – see: **trinomial combination**

**trinomial combination**

a binary combination (genus plus species epithet) followed by a third epithet at some infraspecific rank.

**triploid**

a polyploid with three sets of chromosomes.

type – see: **nomenclatural type**

**typification**

the act of designating or selecting a nomenclatural type for a name.

**typographical error**

an error introduced by a printer.

**typography**

the visual presentation of printed words and numbers.

**umlaut**

two dots placed over a vowel to indicate a difference in its pronunciation of the vowel. It is a specific example of a diacritical mark (q.v.) and should not be confused with a diaeresis (q.v.).

**undetermined**

of a specimen, not identified.

**UNESCO**

the acronym for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

**uniform**

a condition in which relevant characters of a taxon do not vary beyond a defined limit.

**UPOV**

the acronym for the Union Internationale pour la Protection des Obtentions Végétales (the International Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants), the international body charged with overseeing the administration of Plant Breeders' Rights.

**USLC**

the initials for the United States Library of Congress.

**variant**

a plant or group of plants which shows some measure of difference from the characteristics associated with a particular taxon.

**variety (*varietas*)**

the category in the botanical nomenclatural hierarchy between species and form (*forma*).

**variety**

term used in some national and international legislation for a clearly distinguishable taxon below the rank of species; generally, in legislative texts, a term equivalent to cultivar. See also: **cultivar** and **variety (varietas)**

**variety denomination**

the name for a cultivar designated under the terminology of a statutory plant registration authority. See also: **statutory epithet**

**vegetative propagation**

a specific method of asexual propagation.

vernacular name – see: **common name**

**voucher specimen**

a nominated specimen representing the plant or taxon mentioned in a text or one that is complementary to material specially preserved for studying DNA, cytology, pollen etc.

**wild plant**

one that originated in the wild. See also: **indigen**

**witches' broom**

a mass of congested, often stunted, stems and foliage on a woody plant.

**word element**

a component part of a word; the parts of a word separated by hyphens.

**work**

in nomenclature, any pertinent written information, whether published or unpublished.

**written**

for the purposes of the *ICNCP* the word is used to refer to any form of published material.

**xerography**

any method of producing numerous identical copies based upon an electrostatic process such as by photocopying or laser printing.

## Index to Scientific Names

All references are to Division II (Rules and Recommendations) unless indicated otherwise.  
This index is only for names in a Roman script.

<i>Abies</i>		– ‘King of the Pippins’	13. Ex. 4
– <i>amabilis</i> ‘Spreading Star’	2. Ex. 2	– ‘Mère de Ménage’	13. Ex. 4
– <i>koreana</i> ‘Prostrate Beauty’	2. Ex. 2	– ‘Redskin’	21. Ex. 64
<i>Abutilon Darwinii</i> Group	22. Ex. 2	äpple	
<i>Acer platanoides</i> ‘Drummondii’	2. Ex. 6	– GULDPARMÄN (‘King of the Pippins’)	13. Ex. 4
<i>Achillea</i>		– HUSMODER (‘Mère de Ménage’)	13. Ex. 4
– ‘Cerise Queen’	21. Ex. 2	– KESÄTER (‘Blauschwanz’)	13. Ex. 4
– <i>millefolium</i> ‘Cerise Queen’	21. Ex. 2	<i>Arachnis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8
<i>Achimenes</i> ‘Show-off’	35. Ex. 12	<i>Argyranthemum</i>	
<i>Aconitum napellus</i> subsp. <i>lobelianum</i> ‘Bergfürst’	8. Ex. 5	– ‘Ohmadsant’	11. Ex. 2
<i>Aerides</i>		– ‘Quinta White’ (‘Quinta White’)	35. Ex. 4
– <i>multiflorum</i>	4. Ex. 3	– SANTANA ‘Ohmadsant’	11. Ex. 2
– <i>roseum</i>	4. Ex. 3	<i>Ascocentrum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 1, 6
× <i>Agroelymus</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7	ash ‘Veronica’	21. Ex. 39
× <i>Agrohordeum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7, 9	<i>Asparagus</i>	
× <i>Agropogon</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	– <i>officinalis</i> ‘Calet’	2. Ex. 1
<i>Agropyron</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7, 9	– ‘Lucullus’	2. Ex. 13
– <i>intermedium</i> ‘Clarke’	2. Ex. 13	<i>Aspasia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5
<i>Agrostis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Aster amellus</i> ‘Veilchenkoenigin’ (‘Veilchenkönigin’)	35. Ex. 6
<i>Alcea</i>		<i>Astrantia</i>	
– Chater’s Double Group	8. Ex. 2	– <i>major</i> ‘Sunningdale Var.’	35. Ex. 8
– <i>rosea</i> ‘Chater’s Double Group’	8. Ex. 2	– ‘Sunningdale Variegated’ (‘Sunningdale Var.’)	35. Ex. 8
<i>Allium cepa</i> Shallot Group	22. Ex. 1	<i>Ballota nigra</i> ‘Archer’s Variety’	2. Ex. 8
<i>Alonsoa warscewiczii</i> ‘Peachy-keen’	35. Ex. 12	barley ‘OAC Baxter’	21. Ex. 26
× <i>Alpingera</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	× <i>Beallara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5
<i>Alpinia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Begonia</i>	
× <i>Amarcrinum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 3	– Elatior Group	3. Ex. 13, 8. Ex. 4, 15. Ex. 1
<i>Amaryllis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 3	– ‘Elegantissima Superba’	21. Ex. 16
<i>Anacamptis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Belladonna</i>	Div. III. Ex. 3
apple		<i>Beta</i>	
– ‘Blauschwanz’	13. Ex. 4	– Spinach Beet Group	22. Ex. 3
– ‘Bramley’s Seedling’	21. Ex. 65	– <i>vulgaris</i> ‘SP6 926-0’	2. Ex. 12
– ‘Bramley’s Wonder’	21. Ex. 65	<i>Betula</i>	
– ‘Earliest of All’	21. Ex. 50	– <i>pendula</i> ‘Penla’	2. Ex. 10
– ‘East Malling Champion’	21. Ex. 66		
– ‘James Grieve’	21. Ex. 4		

– <i>utilis</i> ‘Doorenbos’	Div. V. Ex. 1	– <i>sasanqua</i> ‘Maiden’s Blush’	14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 5
<i>Bletilla</i>			
– Penway Dragon grex	8. Ex. 7	– ‘Shōjō-no-mai’	21. Ex. 3
– Penway Prelude grex (Penway Dancer Group) ‘Ballerina’	16. Ex. 4	<i>Campanula trachelium</i> ‘Bernice’	2. Ex. 19
<i>Brachyglottis</i>		<i>Capsicum annuum</i> ‘Delight’	2. Ex. 14
– Dunedin Group	3. Ex. 7	<i>Carex</i>	21. Ex. 38
– Dunedin Hybrids	3. Ex. 7	– ‘Fuiiri-tenjiku’	21. Ex. 38
<i>Brassia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5	– <i>phyllocephala</i>	21. Ex. 38
<i>Brassica</i>		– ‘Yodo-no-yuki’	35. Ex. 13
– <i>oleracea</i> Brussels Sprout Group		<i>Castanea</i> ‘Pale Chestnut’	21. Ex. 33
	11. Ex. 3, 32. Ex. 5	<i>Cattleya</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
– – Gemmifera Group		– × <i>claesiana</i>	23. Ex. 3
	8. Ex. 6, 11. Ex. 3, 22. Ex. 1	– <i>Claesiana</i> grex	23. Ex. 3
– – Groupe du Chou de Bruxelles	32. Ex. 5	– <i>intermedia</i>	23. Ex. 3
– – ‘King Arthur’	2. Ex. 14	– <i>loddigesii</i>	23. Ex. 3
– – ‘Nichtsschiessender’	32. Ex. 1	– <i>warneri</i> ‘Poa’	21. Ex. 42
– – Rosenkohl Gruppe	32. Ex. 5	<i>Cedrus</i>	
– – var. <i>sabauda</i>	3. Ex. 6	– <i>atlantica</i>	29. Ex. 3
– – Sabauda Group	3. Ex. 6	– – ‘Aurea’	29. Ex. 3
– – (Sabauda Group) ‘Cantasa’	15. Ex. 2	– <i>libani</i>	29. Ex. 3
– – Sabellica Gruppe	15. Ex. 1	– – subsp. <i>atlantica</i> ‘Mt St Catherine’	21. Ex. 5
– <i>rapa</i> Pak-choi Group	22. Ex. 2	– – ‘Atlantica Aurea’	29. Ex. 3
× <i>Brilliandeara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5	– – Atlantica Group	29. Ex. 3
<i>Buxus sempervirens</i>	2. Ex. 25	– – ‘Aurea’	29. Ex. 3
		– ‘Mount Saint Catherine’ (‘Mt St Catherine’)	21. Ex. 5, 35. Ex. 9
<i>Cactaceae</i>	6. Ex. 2	<i>Cenchrus ciliaris</i> ‘Higgins’	2. Ex. 16
<i>Calanthe</i>		<i>Cereus hildmannianus</i>	
– × <i>dominyi</i>	1. Ex. 3	‘Monstrosus’	2. Ex. 20
– <i>masuca</i>	1. Ex. 3	<i>Chamaecyparis</i>	
– <i>triplicata</i>	1. Ex. 3	– <i>lawsoniana</i> ‘Ellwoodii’	2. Ex. 3
<i>Calluna</i>		– – ‘Green Pillar’	11. Ex. 4
– ‘Heather’	21. Ex. 40	– – ‘Jackman’s Variety’	11. Ex. 4
– <i>vulgaris</i> ‘Aurea’	21. Ex. 16	– – ‘Silver Queen’	8. Ex. 5
– – ‘Redgauntlet’ (‘Red Gauntlet’)	35. Ex. 4	– <i>pisifera</i>	29. Ex. 4
‘Calluna’ heather	21. Ex. 39	– – ‘Squarrosa’	29. Ex. 4
‘Calypso’ <i>Rhododendron</i>	21. Ex. 39	<i>Choisya</i>	
‘Cambridge Favourite’		– ‘Limo’	17. Ex. 1
morangueiro	8. Ex. 1	– <i>ternata</i> GOLDFINGERS ‘Limo’	17. Ex. 1
‘Cambridge Favourite’ strawberry	8. Ex. 1	– – ‘Limo’	17. Ex. 1
<i>Camellia</i>		– ‘Choisya ternata Goldfingers’	17. Ex. 1
– ‘Daisy Eagleson’ (‘+ Daisy Eagleson’)	14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 5	<i>Chrysanthemum</i> ‘Dewwhite	
		Improved’	31. Ex. 2
– <i>japonica</i>	14. Ex. 4, 24. Ex. 5		

Index, Scientific names

<i>Clematis</i>		
– BLUE ANGEL ('Błękitny Anioł')	32. Ex. 3	
– 'Cadmy'	11. Ex. 1	
– 'Ed. André' ('Edouard André')	35. Ex. 9	
– 'Edouard André'	35. Ex. 9	
– <i>florida</i>	21. Ex. 43	
– 'Florida Blue'	21. Ex. 43	
– 'Morning Yellow'	11. Ex. 1	
– MORNING YELLOW 'Cadmy'	11. Ex. 1	
<i>Cochlioda</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5, 6	
× <i>Cogniauxara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8	
<i>Comparettia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6	
<i>Coprosma</i> 'The Shiner' ("Shiner")	31. Ex. 6	
<i>Coryanthes macrantha</i>	31. Ex. 7	
<i>Corydalis taliensis</i> ACE 2443 ( 'ACE 2443', 'Ace 2443')	21. Ex. 55	
× <i>Coryhopea</i>		
– Butler's Balzac grex	31. Ex. 7	
– Off the Wall grex	31. Ex. 7	
<i>Corylus</i>		
– <i>avellana</i>	2. Ex. 24	
– <i>colurna</i>	2. Ex. 24	
<i>Cotoneaster</i> × <i>watereri</i>	Div. V. Ex. 2	
+ <i>Crataegomespilus</i>	24. Ex. 2, 27. Ex. 2	
– 'Dardarii'	2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 4, 6	
– 'Jules d'Asnières'	24. Ex. 6	
<i>Crataegus</i>	24. Ex. 1, 2, 27. Ex. 2	
– <i>monogyna</i>	2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 4, 6	
× <i>Crataemespilus</i>	24. Ex. 2	
– <i>gillotii</i>	24. Ex. 4	
“× <i>Crindonna</i> ”	Div. III. Ex. 3	
<i>Crinum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 3	
<i>Crocus</i>		
– <i>chrysanthus</i> 'E. A. Bowles' ( "Edward Augustus Bowles")	35. Ex. 10	
– 'Eye-catcher'	35. Ex. 12	
<i>Cucumis</i>		
– <i>flexuosus</i>	27. Ex. 5	
– <i>melo</i> Flexuosus Group	27. Ex. 5	
– <i>sativus</i> NOA'S FORCING ('Noas Treib')	32. Ex. 3	
<i>Cucurbita</i>		
– Kabocha Group	32. Ex. 6	
– Kabocha-Gruppen	32. Ex. 6	
<i>Cyclamen hederifolium</i> var. <i>hederifolium</i> f. <i>albiflorum</i> (Bowles's Apollo Group) 'Artemis'	21. Ex. 56	
<i>Cydonia oblonga</i> 'Malling C'	2. Ex. 23	
<i>Cymbidium</i>		
– <i>Alexanderi</i>	16. Ex. 2	
– <i>Alexanderi</i> gx	16. Ex. 2	
– ( <i>Alexanderi</i> gx) 'Westonbirt'	16. Ex. 1	
– <i>Alexanderi</i> gx 'Westonbirt'	16. Ex. 1	
<i>Cytisus purpureus</i>	24. Ex. 1, 3	
<i>Dahlia</i> 'Northwest Cosmos'	21. Ex. 42	
<i>Daphne</i> × <i>burkwoodii</i> 'Carol Mackie'	2. Ex. 6	
'Daphne' <i>Magnolia</i>	21. Ex. 39	
<i>Delphinium</i>		
– 'Astolat'	2. Ex. 8	
– 'Cranberry Delight'	Div. V. Ex. 4	
– 'Princess Caroline Sunrise'	27. Ex. 4	
<i>Dendrobium</i>		
– Alan Mann grex	4. Ex. 2	
– Caesar grex	4. Ex. 2	
– <i>lasianthera</i>	4. Ex. 2	
– <i>ostrinoglossum</i>	4. Ex. 2	
– Soo Chee grex	4. Ex. 2	
× <i>Devereuxara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6	
<i>Dianthus</i>	Div. V. Ex. 3	
– "Devon Opal"	21. Ex. 60	
– 'Giulia Viola'	21. Ex. 42	
– LADY MADONNA ('WP04 Opal')	21. Ex. 60	
– 'M. Charles Coëz' ('Monsieur Charles Coëz')	35. Ex. 10	
– "Opal"	21. Ex. 60	
– 'Rupert's Pink'	21. Ex. 34	
– 'Samur'	21. Ex. 48	
– 'Samurai'	21. Ex. 48	
– 'Sara'	21. Ex. 48	
– 'Victoria'	21. Ex. 39	
– 'William Sim'	2. Ex. 18, 21. Ex. 4	
– 'Zara'	21. Ex. 48	
<i>Dieffenbachia</i>		
– 'Compacta'	11. Ex. 5	
– 'Exotica'	11. Ex. 5	
– 'Exotica Compacta'	11. Ex. 5	

*Index, Scientific names*

– ‘Exotica Perfecta’	11. Ex. 5	<i>Erodium daucoides</i> ‘Pico de Fraile’	27. Ex. 3
– ‘Exotica Perfecta Compacta’	11. Ex. 5	<i>Etlingera</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2
<i>Digitalis</i> ‘Mertonensis’		<i>Euanthe</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8
(“× Mertonensis”)	14. Ex. 5	– <i>sanderiana</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8
<i>Distictis</i>		<i>Eucalyptus camaldulensis</i>	2. Ex. 11
– <i>buccinatoria</i>	14. Ex. 5		
– <i>laxiflora</i>	14. Ex. 5	<i>Fagus</i>	
– ‘Mrs Rivers’ (“× Mrs Rivers”)	14. Ex. 5	– <i>sylvatica</i> var. <i>atropunicea</i>	29. Ex. 1
<i>Dracaena</i>		– – ‘Atropunicea’	29. Ex. 1
– Deremensis Group	22. Ex. 1	– – Atropunicea Group	
– <i>fragrans</i> (Deremensis Group)			11. Ex. 3, 20. Ex. 4, 29. Ex. 1
‘Christianne’	15. Ex. 2	– – (Atropunicea Group) ‘Riversii’	15. Ex. 2
– – ‘Massangeana’ ( <i>D.</i>		– – f. <i>atropurpurea</i>	29. Ex. 1
<i>massangeana</i> )	Div. V. Ex. 5	– – Cuprea Group	20. Ex. 4
– <i>massangeana</i> hort. ex.		– – Groupe à Feuilles Pourpres	32. Ex. 4
Rodigas	Div. V. Ex. 5	– – Gruppo con Foglie Purpuree	32. Ex. 4
Drehwurz Awful grex	8. Ex. 3	– – Purple-leaved Group	
			11. Ex. 3, 22. Ex. 2, 32. Ex. 4
× <i>Elyhordeum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7	– – Purpurblättrige Gruppe	32. Ex. 4
× <i>Elymotriticum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7	<i>Festuca</i>	
<i>Elymus</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7	– <i>rubra</i> Hexaploid Creeping Group	3. Ex. 3
<i>Endymion hispanicus</i> ‘Rose		– – Hexaploid Non-creeping Group	3. Ex. 3
Queen’	21. Ex. 9	– – Octoploid Creeping Group	3. Ex. 3
<i>Epimedium</i>		<i>Ficus</i>	
– <i>alpinum</i>	21. Ex. 59	– <i>binnendijkii</i> ‘Alii’	2. Ex. 3
– <i>pinnatum</i>	21. Ex. 59	– – ‘Amstel King’	2. Ex. 3
– × <i>warleyense</i>	21. Ex. 59	– – ‘Amstel Queen’	2. Ex. 3
– – ‘Willmottiae’	21. Ex. 59	<i>Filipendula ulmaria</i> ‘Variegata’	2. Ex. 6
<i>Epiphyllum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Fragaria</i>	
– ‘Germany’s Best’	21. Ex. 51	– × <i>ananassa</i> ‘Cambridge	
<i>Eragrostis curvula</i> ‘Catalina’	2. Ex. 16	Favourite’	8. Ex. 1
Erdbeere ‘Cambridge Favourite’	8. Ex. 1	– ‘Cambridge Favourite’	8. Ex. 1
<i>Erica</i>		fraisier ‘Cambridge Favourite’	8. Ex. 1
– ‘Calluna’	21. Ex. 39	<i>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</i> ‘Newport’	2. Ex. 1
– <i>carnea</i> ‘Mrs D. E. Maxwell’	21. Ex. 46	<i>Fuchsia</i> ‘Shangri-La’	35. Ex. 12
– – ‘S. A. Maxwell’	21. Ex. 46	<i>Funckia albomarginata</i>	21. Ex. 57
– <i>cinerea</i> ‘Lily’	31. Ex. 8		
– – ‘Lily Evelyn’	31. Ex. 8	<i>Galanthus</i>	
– <i>vagans</i> var. <i>kevernensis</i>	29. Ex. 2	– ‘Celia Blakeway-Phillips’	35. Ex. 12
– – ‘Kevernensis’	29. Ex. 2	– ‘John Gray’	21. Ex. 1
– – ‘Mrs D. F. Maxwell’	21. Ex. 46	<i>Gaultheria</i>	6. Ex. 3
– – ‘St Keverne’	29. Ex. 2	<i>Geranium</i>	
– × <i>williamsii</i> ‘Cow-y-Jack’	35. Ex. 12	– ‘Herb Robert’	21. Ex. 40
‘Erica’ <i>Lilium</i>	21. Ex. 39	– ‘Mrs Kendall Clark’	21. Ex. 5
<i>Eriobotrya</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2		

Index, Scientific names

– <i>robertianum</i>	21. Ex. 40	<i>Hordeum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7, 9
<i>Gerbera</i> ‘Delphi’	2. Ex. 1	<i>Hosta</i>	21. Ex. 37
<i>Geum</i> ‘Lady Stratheden’	2. Ex. 8	– <i>fortunei</i>	3. Ex. 5, 29. Ex. 5
<i>Gladiolus</i> ‘Pink Gladiolus’	21. Ex. 33	– – ‘Albopicta’	29. Ex. 5
<i>Glycine max</i> ‘Jupiter-R’	2. Ex. 13	– Fortunei Group	3. Ex. 5
‘Golden Harvest’ daffodil	21. Ex. 4	– (Fortunei Group) ‘Albopicta’	29. Ex. 5
<i>Gymnadenia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2, 4	– ‘Frances Williams’	22. Ex. 8
× <i>Gymnanacamptis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	– Frances Williams Group	22. Ex. 8
		– ‘Halcyon’	2. Ex. 21
<i>Hebe</i>		– ‘June’	2. Ex. 21
– ‘Longacre Variety’	21. Ex. 29	– ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’	34. Ex. 5
– <i>pinguifolia</i> ‘Sutherlandii’	21. Ex. 12	– <i>pycnophylla</i> ‘Ōgon-Setouchi’	21. Ex. 37
<i>Hedera</i>		– ‘Shelleys’ (“Shelley’s”)	35. Ex. 16
– <i>helix</i> ‘Arborescens’	2. Ex. 3	– <i>sieboldii</i>	21. Ex. 57
– – ‘Baden-Baden’	35. Ex. 12	– – ‘Albomarginata’	21. Ex. 57
<i>Helianthus</i>		– – ‘Sieboldii’	21. Ex. 57
– <i>annuus</i> ‘E9730LM’	21. Ex. 54	<i>Hyacinthoides</i>	
– – ‘H 209 A/B’	21. Ex. 54	– <i>hispanica</i> ‘Rose Queen’	21. Ex. 9
– – ‘HA306’	2. Ex. 12	– × <i>massartiana</i> ‘Rose Queen’	21. Ex. 9
– – ‘HA-OL 9’	21. Ex. 54	<i>Hydrangea</i>	
– – ‘NS-HA26’	21. Ex. 54	– Lacecap Group	22. Ex. 1
– – ‘PF 090 A’	21. Ex. 54	– <i>macrophylla</i> Groupe Hortensis	15. Ex. 1
– – ‘PR64A82’	21. Ex. 54	<i>Hylocereeae</i>	6. Ex. 2
<i>Hemerocallis</i>		<i>Hypericum</i>	
– ‘Knights in White Satin’	21. Ex. 6	– <i>androsaemum</i>	1. Ex. 2
– ‘Now and Forever’	21. Ex. 6	– <i>hircinum</i>	1. Ex. 2
– ‘Potion for Passion’	21. Ex. 6	– × <i>inodorum</i>	1. Ex. 2
– ‘Pure and Simple’	21. Ex. 6	– <i>perforatum</i> ‘Topaz’	2. Ex. 16
– <i>sieboldii</i>	21. Ex. 57	– ‘Rowallane Variety’	21. Ex. 29
– ‘Trimmed in Gold’	21. Ex. 6		
<i>Hepatica</i> ‘Niigata-no-yuki’	34. Ex. 4	<i>Ilex</i>	
<i>Hibiscus</i>		– <i>crenata</i> ‘Greenpoint’	21. Ex. 44
– <i>rosa-sinensis</i>	6. Ex. 1	– ‘Green Point’	21. Ex. 44
– <i>syriacus</i> BLUE BIRD (‘L’Oiseau Bleu’)	32. Ex. 3	– × <i>meserveae</i> ‘Blue Angel’	28. Ex. 3
– – ‘Hanbora’	34. Ex. 2	– – ‘Mesog’	28. Ex. 3
– – ‘Hangyeore’	34. Ex. 2	– <i>myrtifolia</i> ‘Aurea’	2. Ex. 6
– – ‘Hansomi’	34. Ex. 2	<i>Ionopsis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
– – ‘L’Oiseau Bleu’	32. Ex. 3	<i>Iris</i>	
– – ‘Violaceus’	21. Ex. 16	– ‘American Flag’	21. Ex. 64
<i>Hippophae rhamnoides</i> ‘Ram’	2. Ex. 10	– ‘Cantab’	8. Ex. 4, 14. Ex. 1
hollyhock ‘Chater’s Double Group’	8. Ex. 2	– <i>chrysographes</i> ‘Inshriach’ (“Inshriach Form”)	21. Ex. 29
× <i>Holttumara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8	– Dutch Group	3. Ex. 2
		– <i>tingitana</i>	3. Ex. 2

– <i>unguicularis</i> ‘Kilndown’	2. Ex. 5	– Mount Shasta grex	22. Ex. 6
– <i>xiphium</i> var. <i>lusitanica</i>	3. Ex. 2	– Mount Shasta Group	22. Ex. 6
– – var. <i>praecox</i>	3. Ex. 2	– <i>pardalinum</i>	22. Ex. 6
		– ‘Pumpkin Sweet’	22. Ex. 5
<i>Juniperus</i>		– ‘Tetra Brandywine’	2. Ex. 15
– <i>chinensis</i> ‘Plumosa		– ‘Unique’	22. Ex. 5
Aureovariegata’	2. Ex. 6	<i>Lotus corniculatus</i> ‘Cree’	2. Ex. 13
– – ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	<i>Lycaste</i>	
– <i>excelsa</i> ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	– <i>aromatica</i> ‘Saint Thomas’	6. Ex. 5
– – ‘Viridis Stricta’ ( <i>viridis stricta</i> )	21. Ex. 14	– <i>deppei</i>	1. Ex. 3
– <i>horizontalis</i> ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	– ‘Saint Thomas’	6. Ex. 5
– <i>procumbens</i> ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	– <i>skinmeri</i>	1. Ex. 3
– <i>sabina</i> ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	– × <i>smeeana</i>	1. Ex. 3
– ‘Variegata’	21. Ex. 15	– Wyld Spirit	6. Ex. 5
		– Wyld Spirit grex ‘Saint Thomas’	6. Ex. 5
+ <i>Laburnocytisus</i> ‘Adamii’	24. Ex. 3	<i>Lycianthes</i>	6. Ex. 4
<i>Laburnum</i>		<i>Lycopersicon</i>	6. Ex. 4
– <i>anagyroides</i>	24. Ex. 1, 3	<i>Lycoris</i> ‘Daensingswan’	34. Ex. 3
– ‘Latest and Longest’	21. Ex. 50		
<i>Lactuca sativa</i> ‘Kagrner Sommer’	2. Ex. 12	<i>Macroptilium atropurpureum</i>	
lady’s tresses Awful gx	8. Ex. 3	‘Aztec’	2. Ex. 13
<i>Laelia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6	<i>Magnolia</i>	
<i>Lapageria</i>	Div. III. Ex. 9	– Buxom Nordic Blonde Group	3. Ex. 14
<i>Larix</i>		– ‘Daphne’	21. Ex. 39
– <i>decidua</i> ‘Cervicornis’	28. Ex. 1	– Gresham Hybrids (Gresham	
– <i>europaea</i> var. <i>cervicornis</i>	28. Ex. 1	Group)	3. Ex. 14
– <i>kaempferi</i> ‘Palsgård Velling’	2. Ex. 10	– Svelte Brunette Group	3. Ex. 14
<i>Lavatera</i> ‘Ice Cool’	2. Ex. 8	– ‘William Watson’	21. Ex. 3
<i>Lessingia</i>		<i>Mahonia</i> ‘Japonica’ ( <i>M. japonica</i> )	21. Ex. 10
– <i>filaginifolia</i>	20. Ex. 3	<i>Malus</i>	
– – ‘Silver Carpet’	20. Ex. 3	– <i>domestica</i> ‘Beauty of Bath’	21. Ex. 8
× <i>Leucadenia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 4	– – ‘Golden Delicious’	29. Ex. 6
<i>Leucorchis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 4	– – ‘James Grieve’	2. Ex. 22, 21. Ex. 4
<i>Lilium</i>		– – ‘M9’	2. Ex. 22
– Bellingham Group	21. Ex. 65	– – ‘Mullins’s Yellow Seedling’	29. Ex. 6
– ‘Bellingham Supreme’	21. Ex. 65	– – ‘Star Lady’	28. Ex. 4
– ‘Brandywine’	2. Ex. 15	– <i>floribunda</i> ‘Arnoldiana’	21. Ex. 16
– Celica Group	22. Ex. 5	<i>Mespilus</i>	24. Ex. 1, 2, 27. Ex. 2
– Darkest Red Group	3. Ex. 8	– <i>germanica</i>	2. Ex. 7, 24. Ex. 4, 6
– Darkest Red Selections	3. Ex. 8	<i>Milium effusum</i> ‘Aureum’	2. Ex. 8
– ‘Erica’	21. Ex. 39	<i>Miltonia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5
– ‘Henri’	21. Ex. 43	<i>Monarda</i> ‘Marshall’s Delight’	
– <i>henryi</i>	21. Ex. 43	(“Marshalls Delight”)	35. Ex. 16
– <i>kelloggii</i>	22. Ex. 6		



Index, Scientific names

<i>Narcissus</i>	Div. V. Ex. 3	– Lucifer grex	4. Ex. 1
– ‘Alnwick Beauty’	28. Ex. 2	– Sorel	16. Ex. 2
– ‘Amy Johnson’	21. Ex. 47	– Sorel grex	4. Ex. 1, 16. Ex. 2
– ‘Commander-in-Chief’		– Sorel gx	8. Ex. 4
(“Commander in Chief”)	35. Ex. 11, 12	<i>Pelargonium</i>	
– ‘Davis Daff’	21. Ex. 33	– ‘Chi-Chi’	35. Ex. 12
– ‘Golden Harvest’	21. Ex. 4	– ‘Freak of Nature’	2. Ex. 6
– ‘Granny’s Daffodil’	21. Ex. 33	<i>Pernettya</i>	6. Ex. 3
– ‘Miss Amy Johnson’	21. Ex. 47	<i>Persicaria affinis</i> ‘Donald	
<i>Nelumbo</i>	21. Ex. 38	Lowndes’ (“Lowndes’s	
– <i>nucifera</i>	21. Ex. 38	Variety”)	21. Ex. 29
– ‘Ōga’	21. Ex. 38	<i>Phalaenopsis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
– ‘Ōga-Hasu’	21. Ex. 38	<i>Phaseolus vulgaris</i> ‘Contender’	2. Ex. 12
<i>Neofinetia</i>		<i>Philadelphus</i> ‘Debureaux’	
– <i>falcata</i>	3. Ex. 9	(“Deberoux”)	35. Ex. 3
– – Hariba Group	3. Ex. 9	× <i>Philageria</i>	Div. III. Ex. 9
– – Mameba Group	3. Ex. 9	<i>Philesia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 9
– – Shiro-fukurin Group	3. Ex. 9	<i>Phlox</i>	
– – Tora-fu Group	3. Ex. 9	– ‘Excellent’	21. Ex. 51
– ‘Ō-nami-sekai’	34. Ex. 5	– <i>paniculata</i> ‘Kirchenfuerst’	
<i>Nerium</i> ‘Professeur Durand’ (‘Prof.		(“Kirchenfürst”)	35. Ex. 6
Durand’)	35. Ex. 9	– ‘Phlox of Sheep’	21. Ex. 33
<i>Nymphaea</i>		<i>Picea</i>	
– ‘Dr Florence’ (‘Docteur		– <i>abies</i>	2. Ex. 4
Florence’)	35. Ex. 9	– – ‘Little Gem’	2. Ex. 4
– ‘Gloire du Temple-sur-Lot’	35. Ex. 12	– – ‘Nidiformis’	2. Ex. 4
oak ATTENTION!	13. Ex. 3	– – (provenance Gortel-1)	2. Ex. 11
<i>Odontoglossum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5, 6	– <i>pungens</i> ‘J. James’ (“Jesse	
<i>Oncidium</i>	Div. III. Ex. 5, 6	James”)	35. Ex. 10
onion		<i>Pinus</i>	
– ‘NuMex Arthur’	21. Ex. 25	– <i>sylvestris</i> ‘Hexguld’ (“Häxguld”)	35. Ex. 4
– ‘NuMex Crimson’	21. Ex. 25	– – cv. ‘Repens’	14. Ex. 2
– ‘NuMex Freedom’	21. Ex. 25	– – ‘Repens’	14. Ex. 2
– ‘NuMex Solano’	21. Ex. 25	– – <i>repens</i>	14. Ex. 2
<i>Osteospermum</i> ‘Hopleys’		– – var. <i>Repens</i>	14. Ex. 2
(“Hopley’s”)	35. Ex. 16	<i>Pisum</i> ‘Consort’	21. Ex. 3
<i>Paeonia</i>		<i>Pittosporum</i>	
– ‘Kokuryū-nishiki’	34. Ex. 4	– ‘Garnettii’	2. Ex. 17
– ‘Sussex Peony’	21. Ex. 33	– ‘John Flanagan’	2. Ex. 17
<i>Paphiopedilum</i>		– ‘Margaret Turnbull’	2. Ex. 17
– Atlantis grex	4. Ex. 1	<i>Pleione</i>	
– Greenteaicecreamandraspberries		– Confirmation grex	23. Ex. 2
grex	23. Ex. 1	– × <i>lagenaria</i>	23. Ex. 2
		– Lassen Peak grex	23. Ex. 2
		– Liz Shan grex	23. Ex. 2

– <i>maculata</i>	23. Ex. 2	– <i>frainetto</i>	20. Ex. 2
– <i>praecox</i>	23. Ex. 2	– ‘Hungarian Crown’	20. Ex. 2
<i>Poa pratensis</i> ‘Baron’	2. Ex. 16	– <i>robur</i> ‘Concordia’	31. Ex. 10
poire ‘Doyenné du Comice’	21. Ex. 4	– ‘Golden’	31. Ex. 10
<i>Polypodium vulgare</i> ‘Bifido- cristatum’	35. Ex. 18	– ‘Wandell’	13. Ex. 3
<i>Polypogon</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Ranunculus</i>	
potato		– ‘Brazen Hussy’	22. Ex. 9
– ‘Cara’	21. Ex. 4	– <i>ficaria</i> Brazen Hussy Group	22. Ex. 9
– ‘Red Craigs Royal’	2. Ex. 6	× <i>Renades</i> Arunoday grex	4. Ex. 3
– ‘Sharpe’s Express’	21. Ex. 2	<i>Renanthera</i>	Div. III. Ex. 8
<i>Potentilla</i> ‘Davidson’s Red’	21. Ex. 65	– <i>imschootiana</i>	4. Ex. 3
<i>Primula</i>		<i>Retinospora squarrosa</i>	29. Ex. 4
– Border Auricula Group	3. Ex. 1	× <i>Rhaphiobotrya</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2
– <i>denticulata</i> ‘Cachmeriana’	21. Ex. 10	<i>Rhaphiolepis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2
– var. <i>cachmeriana</i>	21. Ex. 10	<i>Rhododendron</i>	21. Ex. 18
– ‘MacWatt’s Blue’	3. Ex. 1	– ‘Albatross’	22. Ex. 7
– ‘Old Irish Scented’	3. Ex. 1	– ‘Ambrosius Superbus’	
– ‘Osborne Green’	3. Ex. 1	(“Ambrosius Superbum”)	21. Ex. 18
<i>Prunus</i>		– <i>boothii</i>	3. Ex. 4
– ‘Ama-no-gawa’	34. Ex. 4	– ‘Mishmiense Group’	3. Ex. 4
– ‘Beni-chidori’	35. Ex. 13	– ‘Calypso’	21. Ex. 39
– ‘Chōshū-hizakura’	34. Ex. 6	– <i>facetum</i>	22. Ex. 7
– ‘Chōshū-hizakura’	34. Ex. 5, 6	– Jacqueline Group	22. Ex. 7
– <i>domestica</i> ‘Apricot’	21. Ex. 41	– Jacqueline-Gruppen	15. Ex. 1
– ‘Peach’	21. Ex. 41	– ‘Ladies’ White’	21. Ex. 49
– ‘Hikaru Genji’	21. Ex. 8	– ‘Lady White’	21. Ex. 49
– ‘Kojō-no-mai’	34. Ex. 5	– ‘Madonna’ (Brooks)	30. Ex. 2
– <i>mume</i>	34. Ex. 1	– ‘Madonna’ (Gable)	30. Ex. 2
– ‘Hong’yan Gongfen’	35. Ex. 1	– ‘Maurice Daffarn’	Div. V. Ex. 6
– ‘Xuehai Gongfen’	34. Ex. 1	– <i>mishmiense</i>	3. Ex. 4
– ‘Yanhong Zhaoshui’	34. Ex. 1	– ‘Nancy Stipa’	21. Ex. 42
– ‘Zao Yudie’	34. Ex. 1	– Northern Lights Group	35. Ex. 12
– ‘Sato-zakura’	21. Ex. 35	– ‘Rhododendron Mad’	21. Ex. 33
– ‘Taki-nioi’	34. Ex. 4	– ‘Sherbrooke’ (“Sherbrook”)	35. Ex. 2
× <i>Pseudadenia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 4	– ‘Terracotta’ (“Terra-Cotta”)	35. Ex. 17
<i>Pseudorchis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 4	– ‘Tri-Lights’	35. Ex. 12
‘Puzol’ pepino	21. Ex. 4	× <i>Rhynchosophrocattleya</i> Marie Lemon Stick grex Francis	
<i>Pyrus</i>		Suzuki Group	16. Ex. 3
– <i>bretschneideri</i> ‘Ya Li’	21. Ex. 36	– Marie Lemon Stick gx Francis	
– <i>communis</i> ‘Merton Pride’	2. Ex. 23	Suzuki Gp	16. Ex. 3
<i>Quercus</i>		<i>Rhynchostylis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 1, 6
– ATTENTION! oak	13. Ex. 3	× <i>Rodrettiopsis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6

Index, Scientific names

<i>Rodriguezia</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6	'Snowflake' snowdrop	21. Ex. 39
<i>Rosa</i>		<i>Solanum</i>	6. Ex. 4
– <i>carolina</i> 'Indabes'	2. Ex. 10	– <i>aethiopicum</i> Gilo Group	22. Ex. 2
– PEACE ('Madame A. Meilland')	17. Ex. 2	– <i>muricatum</i> 'Puzol'	21. Ex. 4
– Polyantha Group	22. Ex. 1	– <i>nigrum</i>	1. Ex. 1
– 'Pompon de Paris'	21. Ex. 8	– <i>physalifolium</i>	1. Ex. 1
rose		– × <i>procurrens</i>	1. Ex. 1
– 'Ausburton' (Ausburton)	31. Ex. 1	– 'Sharpe's Express'	21. Ex. 2
– 'Harwestsun'	21. Ex. 27	– <i>tuberosum</i> 'Cara'	21. Ex. 4
– 'Harwex'	21. Ex. 27	– – 'Desiree'	3. Ex. 10
– 'Harwharry'	21. Ex. 27	– – Maincrop Group	3. Ex. 11
– 'Harwicklow'	21. Ex. 27	– – (Maincrop Group) 'Desiree'	3. Ex. 10
– 'Korlanum'	13. Ex. 1	– – Maincrop Red-skinned Group	3. Ex. 11
– SOMMERWIND ('Korlanum')	13. Ex. 1	– – Red-skinned Group	3. Ex. 11
– SURREY ('Korlanum')	13. Ex. 1	– – (Red-skinned Group) 'Desiree'	3. Ex. 10
– VENT D'ÉTÉ ('Korlanum')	13. Ex. 1	– – 'Sharpe's Express'	21. Ex. 2
"Rose Sommerwind"	13. Ex. 1	– – 'Wilja'	2. Ex. 1
"rose Surrey"	13. Ex. 1	× <i>Sophrolaeliocattleya</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
"rose Vent d'Été"	13. Ex. 1	<i>Sophronitis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
rose trémière Groupe Chater's		<i>Sorghum bicolor</i> 'Texas 610'	2. Ex. 14
Double	8. Ex. 2	<i>Spiraea</i>	
		– <i>cantoniensis</i>	21. Ex. 11
<i>Salix</i>		– – <i>f. lanceata</i>	21. Ex. 11
– <i>alba</i> 'Lievalde'	2. Ex. 1	– – 'Lanceata'	21. Ex. 11
– <i>matsudana</i> 'Tortuosa'	2. Ex. 1	– <i>japonica</i> 'Anthony Waterer'	2. Ex. 6
<i>Salvia officinalis</i> 'Tricolor'	2. Ex. 6	<i>Spiranthes</i> Awful grex	8. Ex. 3
<i>Saxifraga fortunei</i> 'Akane-Fuji'		<i>Stanhopea wardii</i>	31. Ex. 7
	21. Ex. 8, 35. Ex. 13	Stockrose 'Chater's Doppelte	
schroeforchis Awful grex	8. Ex. 3	Gruppe'	8. Ex. 2
<i>Scilla</i>		stokroos 'Chater's Dubbele Groep	8. Ex. 2
– <i>campanulata</i> 'Rose Queen'	21. Ex. 9	strawberry 'Cambridge Favourite'	8. Ex. 1
– <i>hispanica</i> var. <i>campanulata</i>		<i>Styrax</i>	
'Rose Queen'	21. Ex. 9	– "Benibana Ego-no-ki"	31. Ex. 9
– – 'Rose Queen'	21. Ex. 9	– <i>japonica</i>	31. Ex. 9
<i>Secale</i>	Div. III. Ex. 10	– – 'Benibana'	31. Ex. 9
<i>Selenicereus</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	– – 'Pink Chimes'	31. Ex. 9
× <i>Seleniphllum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 2	<i>Syringa</i>	18. Ex. 1
<i>Senecio</i>	3. Ex. 7	– 'Charisma'	2. Ex. 5
<i>Silene</i>		– × <i>chinensis</i>	2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 1
– <i>flos-jovis</i>	21. Ex. 40	– 'Correlata' ("+" Correlata")	2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3
– 'Jupiterbloem'	21. Ex. 40	– × <i>hyacinthiflora</i> 'La Cañada'	
snowdrop		('La Canada')	35. Ex. 7
– 'John Gray'	21. Ex. 1	– 'Royalty'	2. Ex. 5
– 'Snowflake'	21. Ex. 39		

– <i>vulgaris</i>	2. Ex. 7, 14. Ex. 3, 24. Ex. 1	‘Veronica’ ash	21. Ex. 39
– – ‘Andenken an Ludwig Späth’		<i>Veronicastrum</i>	21. Ex. 17
	2. Ex. 1, 13. Ex. 2	– <i>virginicum</i> ‘Album’	21. Ex. 17
– – LUDWIG SPAETH	13. Ex. 2	<i>Viburnum</i>	
– – (Veberöd)	2. Ex. 11	– × <i>bodnantense</i>	21. Ex. 58
<i>Thrixspermum</i>		– – ‘Dawn’	21. Ex. 58
– <i>amplexicaule</i>	27. Ex. 1	– <i>farreri</i>	21. Ex. 58
– Eric Holttum grex	27. Ex. 1	– <i>grandiflorum</i>	21. Ex. 58
– <i>scopa</i>	27. Ex. 1	– <i>opulus</i> ‘Xanthocarpum’	2. Ex. 9
<i>Tricyrtis</i> ‘Tögen’	34. Ex. 4	<i>Vicia</i>	
<i>Trifolium repens</i> ‘Star’	2. Ex. 13	– <i>faba</i> Elatae Group	22. Ex. 2
<i>Tripsacum dactyloides</i>	2. Ex. 16	– – ‘Longest Possible’	21. Ex. 50
× <i>Triticale</i>	Div. III. Ex. 10	<i>Victoria</i>	
× <i>Triticosecale</i>	Div. III. Ex. 10	– ‘Adventure’	1. Ex. 4
– ‘Siskiyou’	21. Ex. 3	– <i>amazonica</i>	1. Ex. 4
<i>Triticum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7, 10	– <i>cruziana</i>	1. Ex. 4
– <i>aestivum</i> ‘Marquis’	2. Ex. 12	– ‘Longwood Hybrid’	1. Ex. 4
× <i>Tritordeum</i>	Div. III. Ex. 7	‘Victoria’ <i>Dianthus</i>	21. Ex. 39
<i>Tulipa</i>		<i>Vinca major</i> ‘Variegata’	2. Ex. 6
– ‘Apeldoorn’	2. Ex. 1	<i>Viola</i> ‘Penny Black’	2. Ex. 8
– Breeders Group	3. Ex. 12	<i>Weigela</i>	
– Dutch Breeders Group	3. Ex. 12	– <i>floribunda foliis purpureis</i>	21. Ex. 13
– English Breeders Group	3. Ex. 12	– – ‘Foliis Purpureis’	21. Ex. 13
– Grupo Darwin	15. Ex. 1	wheat ‘AC Avonlea’	21. Ex. 26
– ‘Liberty’ [Krelage, pre-1926]	30. Ex. 1	‘William Sim’ carnation	21. Ex. 4
– ‘Liberty’ [Vooren, 1988]	30. Ex. 1	× <i>Wilsonara</i>	Div. III. Ex. 6
<i>Vanda</i>	Div. III. Ex. 1, 6, 8	yarrow ‘Cerise Queen’	21. Ex. 2
× <i>Vascostylis</i>	Div. III. Ex. 1, 6	<i>Zea</i>	
<i>Verbena hastata</i> ‘Rosea’	2. Ex. 8	– <i>mays</i>	2. Ex. 16
<i>Veronica</i>		– – ‘Wisconsin 153’	2. Ex. 12
– ‘Sutherlandii’	21. Ex. 12		
– <i>virginica</i> ‘Alba’	21. Ex. 17		

## Subject Index

The references in this index are not to pages, but to the Articles, through the Rules and Recommendations etc., of the *Code* as follows: Div. = Division; Pre. = Preamble; Prin. = Principle; Arabic numerals = Rules or, when followed by a letter, Recommendations; Ex. = Example; Nt. = Notes; fn - footnotes. The various Appendices are not here indexed.

Abbreviation		– only one	Prin. 3
– acronym	35B.1	– proposal to accept when contrary to <i>Code</i>	11.6
– blend	35B.1		
– contraction of word	35B.1	– replaced by trade designation for marketing purposes	13.1
– cv.	14.1, 14. Nt. 2	– to accompany cited trade designation	17.2
– doctor	35. Ex. 19	– trade designation not a synonym	13.2
– forms of address	35.9	Accuracy, in naming	Prin. 1, 8
– Gp	15.2	Acronym, definition	35B.1
– initialism	35B.1	Addition sign	
– international organization	31.3	– before cultivar epithet	14.2
– Marylebone Cricket Club	35. Ex. 20	– in graft-chimaera	24.2, 24.3
– mister	35. Ex. 19	Adjective, to agree in gender	21.8–10
– National Aeronautical and Space Agency	35. Ex. 20	Adult cutting material	2. Ex. 3
– “No” (number)	35.8	Africa, as an epithet	21. Ex. 23
– professor	35. Ex. 19	Agamosperous reproduction	2.18
– prohibited	35.9	Agreement, in epithets in Latin form	21.8–21.10
– saint	35. Ex. 19	Agricultural classification, Group used in	3.3
– United Star Ship	35. Ex. 20	Agriculture	Pre. 1
– use of period (full stop)	35B.1	<i>ALA-LC Romanization Tables</i>	33. Nt. 2, 33. Ex. 1, 33A.1
– var.	14.1	Algae	Pre. 7
Aberrant growth	2.8	Alternative Group epithet	32. Nt. 2
Absence of rule	Pre. 10	Alternative terminology	31.2
Accent		Apostrophe	
– addition of	35.6	– erroneous use	35.14
– retention of	35.4	– in German	35. Ex. 15
Accepted name	11	– in possessive noun	35.13
– association with trade designation	17.2	– to denote cultivar status	14. Nt. 1
– choice	29.1–3	– use in epithet	21.18
– definition	11.1	Application of names	Prin. 9
– designation by ICRA	11.5	– <i>ara</i> termination	Div. III. 5–7, 9
– Groups may have more than one	11.4	Arabic numeral, in cultivar epithet	21.15
– in statutory register	11.3	Artificial cross	31. Ex. 7
– not trade designation	Prin. 6	Aurora Borealis, as an epithet	21. Ex. 20
– objection to designation	11.8		

Author		Capital letter(s)	
– abbreviation	28A.1	– group written with	22.3
– citation in accordance with <i>ICBN</i>	28A.1	– in cultivar epithet	21.3
– citation not necessary	28.1	– in grex epithet	23.2
– citation of name	28	– in trade designation	17.3
– citation where epithet reclassified	29.4	<i>Caveat emptor</i> , as an epithet	21. Ex. 21
– name, in reference to description	27B.1	Changes to names, reasons for	Pre. 9
– name not accepted by	27.6	Character(s)	2.4
– of intergeneric graft-chimaera	28.6	– distinctness	2.3
– of name	28	– misleading impression of	21H.1
– of name established by ICRA	28.4	– retention in F1 hybrids	2.18
– of name established by statutory plant registration authority	28.5	– retention of	2.3
– placed after appropriate epithet	28.2	– selection for	2.3
– regard to original taxonomic position	28.2	– stability	2.3
– where epithet translated, transliterated or transcribed	28.3	– uniformity	2.3
Availability, of names for use	Prin. 4, 6	Chinese	
		– books	25.2
Backslash, use in epithet	21.18	– equivalent of “cultivar” in	2. Nt. 2
Bicolor, as an epithet	21. Ex. 20	– hand-copied books	25.2
Black Type typeface	17. Ex. 2	– ideographic characters	34B.1
Blend, definition	35B.1	– trade designations	17. Ex. 2
Bognor Regis, as an epithet	21. Ex. 23	– transcription to Roman alphabet	34B.1
Bonsai	2. Ex. 25	Choice of name	29
Botanic gardens, use of historic abbreviations by	14. Nt. 2	Cicero, as an epithet	21. Ex. 22
“Botanical Code”	Prin. 2	Circumflex, in Japanese transcriptions	34D.2
Brackets (round)		Claudia, Claudius, as epithets	21. Ex. 22
– distinguishing information in	30. Ex. 2	Clone	
– grex epithet in	16.2	– definition	2.5
– Group epithet in	15.3	– derived from aberrant growth	2.8
Brackets (square)		– may form a cultivar	2.5
– distinguishing information in	30. Ex. 1	– variable characteristics	Div. V. Nt. 2
– in Chinese trade designations	17. Ex. 2	<i>Code</i>	
Branch sports	2. Ex. 17	– aims	Pre. 1, Prin. 1
Breeder		– Articles	Pre. 3
– false impression as to	21J.1	– earlier editions	31.5
– identifying codes in roses	21. Ex. 27	– endorsement	Prin. 10
– wishes of	31.4	– examples	Pre. 3
Breeder’s number	21. Nt. 3	– its force	Prin. 10
Breeding material, no longer in existence	30.2	– modification	Div. VI
		– notes	Pre. 3
		– previous editions superseded	Pre. 12
		– Principles	Pre. 2
		– Recommendations	Pre. 5
		– regulation of terminology	Prin. 5

*Subject index*

- relationship to *ICBN* 1
- Rules Pre. 3
- scope Prin. 2
- translation of 2.2
- Code names, as cultivar epithets 21.25
- Collectors' numbers 21. Nt. 3
- Colour chart Div. V. 10
- precise edition Div. V. Nt. 9
- Colour print, as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Ex. 4
- Comma, use in epithet 21.18
- Common name
- Japanese, transcribed 21.21
- not regulated by *Code* Prin. 7
- of genus 21.2
- unambiguous 21.1, 21.2
- Common phrases, in Latin form 21.12
- Competing names 11.7
- Condensed formula Div. III. 2–6, 8–9
- Confusingly similar epithets 29.3
- Conjunctions, in cultivar epithet 21.3
- Connecting vowel 24.3, Div. III. 4, 6
- Conservation 19
- application to conserve 19.1–3
- basis for proposal 19.2
- date effective 19.3
- objection to proposal 11.8
- proposal for 19.2
- publication of decision 19.3
- Conserved name(s) 12
- definition 12.1
- Contraction (of a word) 35B.1
- Contrary to *Code*
- name Pre. 9, 11.5, 12.1, 19.1, 31.1
- name accepted by ICRA when 19.1
- name contrary to Recommendations Pre. 3
- proposal to accept name when 11.6
- registration when Div. IV. 4
- widely used name 11.5–6
- Copyright in images Div. V. Nt. 4
- Corpus Christi, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
- Correct spelling, definition 35.1, 35.2
- Correction
- effect on date of name 9.2
- use of apostrophe 35.14
- use of hyphen 35.14
- with reserve 35A.1
- Covariant, definition 2.23
- Cultivar 2
- accepted name 11.1
- assigned to more than one Group 3.4
- basic category 2.1
- breeder 27D.1, Div. V. 13
- change in distinguishing characters 2.21
- change in propagation 2.21
- circumscription Div. V. Nt. 2
- clonal 2.5
- common equivalents 2. Nt. 2–3
- competing names 29.2
- cyclophysic clone 2.7
- definition 2.3
- derived from chimaera 2.1
- derived from intracellular organism 2.9, 2. Ex. 5
- derived from juvenile forms 2. Ex. 3
- different modes of propagation 2.4
- equivalents in other languages 2. Nt. 2–3
- formed from aberrant growth 2.8
- formed from line 2.14
- formed from multiline 2.15
- graft-chimaera 2.11
- history 27D.1
- indication of status 14.1
- indistinguishable from another 2.2
- introducer 27D.1, Div. V. 13
- judgement of merit or distinctness Div. IV. 5
- nomenclature governed by *Code* Prin. 2
- nominant 27D.1, Div. V. 13
- not equivalent to *forma* or *varietas* 2. Nt. 1
- origins irrelevant 2.2
- parentage 27D.1
- publication of category, name and circumscription 9. Nt. 1
- raiser 27D.1, Div. V. 13
- rootstock, naming of 2.22
- status 14

- term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
- topophysic clone 2.6
- variable characteristics Div. V. Nt. 2
- Cultivar epithet
- abbreviation of 35.9
- accompanied by name of assigned taxon 21A.1
- adjectival words 21G.1
- agreement in epithets in Latin form 21.8–10
- already in use 21.4
- appearing alone 21. Nt. 1
- applied to more than one cultivar 30.5
- Arabic numeral 21.15
- causing offence 21K.1
- code name 21.25
- common name of species 21.22
- confused with Group epithet 22A.1
- confusing in market place 21F.1
- confusingly similar 21.23
- consisting of single letter 21.15
- correction of spelling 35.3, 35A.1
- derivation 27D.1, 35.14
- descriptive words 21G.1
- difficult to pronounce 21D.1
- distinguished typographically 8.A.1
- entirely in Latin 21.11
- exaggerating merits 21.24
- excessively long words 21.13, 21D.1
- false impression of derivation or origins 21I.1
- formation 8.4
- formation in language other than Latin 21. Sect. 3
- fractions 21.19
- governed by this *Code*, not *ICBN* 1.2, 1A.1
- hyphenation 35.11
- Latin form adopted 21.6
- Latin form linked to name of taxon 21.7
- Latin form repeated within denomination class 21.7
- length 21.13, 21D.1
- limitation to characters 21.13
- linked to grex (in orchids) 6.5
- linked to species (in orchids) 6.5
- meaning 27D.1
- misleading impression of attributes 21H.1
- name of genus 21.20–22
- name of living person 21E.1
- new epithet required 21.4
- not to duplicate Latin epithet of taxon 21B.1
- novel invention 21.14
- offensive 21K.1, 31.8
- multiplication sign 14.3
- printed in italics 8A.1
- prohibited characters 21.15, 21.18–19
- prohibited words 21.16–17, 21.20
- prohibitions 21. Sect. 4
- punctuation marks 21.15, 21.18
- rendered between alphabetic scripts 33.1
- retention of Latin epithet as cultivar epithet 21.5, 21.6
- Roman numerals 21.15
- styling 8.3
- symbols 21.19
- terms in market place 21F.1
- to be short 21D.1
- transcription 32.1, 34.1
- translation 32. Nt. 1
- transliteration 32.1, 33.1
- unaltered when name of higher taxon changes 21.4
- use of Latin 21.5, 21.6, 21.7, 21.11, 21.12, 21.12, 21B.1, 32. Nt. 2, 35.1
- validly published one takes precedence 21B.1
- Cultivar epithet examples
- ‘½ Empty’ 21. Ex. 32
- ‘10 Downing Street’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘100%’ 21. Ex. 32
- ‘12AB34CD’, ‘12-AB 34 CD 1’ 21. Ex. 52
- ‘21!’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘400’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘451 Ocean Boulevard’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘4th July’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘77 Sunset Strip’ 21. Ex. 28
- Africa 21. Ex. 23
- ‘Apollo 13’ 21. Ex. 28
- ‘Aurea Bennett’ 21. Ex. 19



*Subject index*

– Aurora Borealis	21. Ex. 20	– Minor	21. Ex. 20
– ‘Beryl, Viscountess Cowdray’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘MMIV’	21. Ex. 28
– bicolor	21. Ex. 20	– Mons	21. Ex. 23
– ‘Blanche’	21. Ex. 63	– museum	21. Ex. 20
– Bognor Regis	21. Ex. 23	– ‘Nani Baker’	21. Ex. 19
– ‘Bonsai’	21. Ex. 62	– “nil desperandum”	21. Ex. 21
– campus	21. Ex. 20	– “noli me tangere”	21. Ex. 21
– ‘Catch 22’	21. Ex. 28	– “non sequitur”	21. Ex. 21
– “Caveat emptor”	21. Ex. 21	– Nova Scotia	21. Ex. 23
– ‘Chloë’	35. Ex. 5	– ‘N!xau’	21. Ex. 31
– Cicero	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Ogon’	21. Ex. 63
– Claudia	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Oh Boy!’	21. Ex. 30
– Claudius	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Owen Glendower’, ‘Owain Glyndwr’	32. Ex. 2
– ‘Container Grown’	21. Ex. 62	– Paulus	21. Ex. 22
– Corpus Christi	21. Ex. 20	– peninsula	21. Ex. 20
– ‘Diplomgartenbauinspektor’	21. Ex. 61	– ‘Poisonous’	21. Ex. 62
– ‘Double Red’	21. Ex. 63	– ‘Pope Leo X’	21. Ex. 28
– ‘E.A. Bowles’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘Post Paid’	21. Ex. 62
– ‘ENT/100’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘Sambuca®’	21. Ex. 32
– ‘Go-go Dancer’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘Simon Who??’	21. Ex. 30
– Gordianus	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Sing, Sing, Sing’	21. Ex. 30
– Habeas Corpus	21. Ex. 20	– ‘Susannah’ if ‘Susanna’ or ‘Susanne’ exist	21. Ex. 45
– ‘Half Empty’	21. Ex. 32	– ‘Tax Free’	21. Ex. 62
– ‘Happy@home.com’	21. Ex. 32	– ‘Ten Dollars’	21. Ex. 62
– ‘Help!!!’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘Two Litres’	21. Ex. 62
– ‘Henry VIII’	21. Ex. 28	– ‘Two Plus Two’	21. Ex. 32
– ‘Hundred’	21. Ex. 28	– ‘Two+Two’	21. Ex. 32
– India	21. Ex. 23	– ‘U!’	21. Ex. 28
– ‘Jeanne d’Arc’	21. Ex. 30	– ‘USS Enterprise’	35. Ex. 20
– Julia	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Variegated’	21. Ex. 63
– Julius Caesar	21. Ex. 22	– ‘Washington Bullatus’	21. Ex. 19
– ‘K’	21. Ex. 28	– ‘Westward Ho!’	21. Ex. 30
– ‘Large’	21. Ex. 63	– ‘Wham! Blam!’	21. Ex. 30
– ‘Large White’	21. Ex. 63	Cultivar name	21
– ‘Loderi Red’	21. Ex. 19	– acceptance of	Div. IV. 1
– Londinium	21. Ex. 23	– accepted, rejection of	11.2
– ‘M9’	21. Ex. 28, 21. Ex. 53	– accepted, replacement of	11.2
– ‘Madame la Comtesse Oswald de Kerchove de Denterghem’	21. Ex. 24	– against wishes of raiser or breeder	31.4
– Major	21. Ex. 20	– author	28, Div. V. 13
– Marston Magna	21. Ex. 23	– citation of author	28.2
– ‘MCC’	35. Ex. 20	– conserved	12.1
– ‘Million’	21. Ex. 32		
– ‘\$Million Dollars’	21. Ex. 32, 21. Ex. 62		

*Subject index*

– definition	8.1, 21.1	– cyclophysic clone	2.7
– duplicate	31.6	– date of name	9.1
– establishment ensured	Div. IV. 2	– date of publication	26.2
– establishment of	27.1, 27.5, 27. Nt. 1, 27A.1	– denomination class	6.1, 6.2
– graft-chimaera	24.4	– denomination class, by statutory authorities	6. Nt. 1
– languages permitted	21.11	– description	27.2
– minimum requirement	21.2	– establishment	10.1
– nationally important	13. Nt. 1	– F1 hybrid	2.16
– nomenclatural standard	Div. V. 1	– graft-chimaera	2.11, 5.1
– registration	Prin. 8	– grex	4.1
– rejection of	31.1	– grex name	23.1
– re-use of epithets	30	– Group	3.1
– starting point for	18.1	– Group name	8.1, 22.1
– wild plants brought into cultivation	20.2	– indelible autograph	25. Nt. 2
Cultivated Plant Code	Prin. 1	– International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA)	Div. IV. 2
Cultivated plants		– line	2.14
– names in accordance with this <i>Code</i>	1A.1	– multiline	2.15
– stable method of naming	Pre. 1	– nomenclatural standard	Div. V. 1
Cyclophysic clone		– printed material	25. Nt. 1
– definition	2.7	– publication	7.1, 25.1
– may form cultivar	2.7	– registrant	Div. IV. 8
Date of name	9	– registrar	Div. IV. 7
– as distinguishing device	30.5	– registration	Div. IV. 1
– correction of spelling, effect on	9.2	– statutory plant registration authority	Div. IV. 3
– definition	9.1	– synonym	13.2
– Plant Breeders' Rights	27. Nt. 2	– topophysic clone	2.6
– where epithet translated, transliterated or transcribed	28.3	– topovariant	2.13
Date of publication	26	– trade designation	13.1
– condition of establishment	27.1	Denomination class	6
– definition	26.2	– announcement	6.3
– evidence of	26.2, 26.4	– changes to	6.3
– spanning more than one year	26.3	– defined by statutory authorities	6. Nt. 1
Definitions	Div. II. Chap. II	– definition	6.1, 6.2
– accepted name	11.1	– division	6.3–4
– acronym	35B.1	– genus	6.2
– blend	35B.1	– hybrid genus	6.2
– clone	2.5	– in orchids	6.5
– conserved name	12.1	– permitted re-use in	6.1
– correct spelling	35.1, 35.2	– similar epithets within	21.23
– covariant	2.23	– special	6.2
– cultivar	2.3	– statutory plant registration authorities	6. Nt. 1
– cultivar name	8.1, 21.1		

*Subject index*

- uniting 6.3–4
- Description
  - accompanied by illustration 27C.1
  - as condition of establishment 27.1
  - definition 27.2
  - differences clearly set out 27A.1
- Diacritical mark 34D.2
  - addition of 35.6
  - retention of 35.4
- Diaeresis 35.5
  - addition of 35.6
- Digital image Div. V. 3
  - printed from file, as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 5
- Disputed names 19.1
- Distinct characters 2.3
- Distribution, of printed copies
  - where publication electronic 25B.2, 25B.3
- Doctor, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 19
- Double quotation marks 14.1
- Duplication, of names Prin. 9, 31.6
- Dutch, equivalent of “cultivar” in 2. Nt. 2
  
- Earliest name 11.1, 29.1
- Electronic media, publication by 25.1, 25B.2, 26. Nt. 1
- Engel-hinshu (Japanese), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 2
- English version of this *Code* Pre. 11
- Epithet, permitted duplication 6.1
- Epithet(s) 8
  - abbreviation of 35.9
  - choice of competing 29.1
  - confusingly similar 22A.1, 29.3
  - equivalent, where abbreviation spelled in full 35.9
  - euphony of Pre. 1
  - first letter 35A.1
  - first syllable 35A.1
  - formation of cultivar epithets 21
  - formation of grex epithets 8.4, 23.3
  - formation of Group epithets 22.4
  - in non-Roman alphabets and characters 27F.2
  - presentation to indicate category 8.3
- re-use authorized by statutory authority 30. Nt. 1
- re-use if original no longer in cultivation 30.2
- styling of 8.3
- subsequent re-use 30.4
- typographical distinction 8A.1
- Equivalent epithets 35.9
- Espalier 2. Ex. 25
- Established custom Pre. 10
- Established name 10
  - prior right, conflict with 31.3
  - rejection 31.3
  - synonym 13.2
- Establishment
  - conditions 27
  - conditions not fulfilled simultaneously 9.1
  - conformity with legislation 10. Nt. 1
  - correct spelling 35.2
  - cultivar name 27.1, 27.5, 27. Nt. 1, 27A.1
  - definition 10.1
  - graft-chimaera name 27.3
  - grex name 27.3, 27.4
  - Group name 27.1, 27A.1
  - names for which no plants exist 27.7
  - of epithet in non-Roman alphabets and characters 27F.2
  - of name in non-Roman script 27F.1
  - simultaneous publication 27.8
- European hazel 2. Ex. 24
- Exclamation mark, use in epithet 21.18
- Existing usage, competing names 29.1–2
  
- F1 hybrid
  - definition 2.16
  - may form cultivar 2.16
  - which retains characteristics 2.18
- Flag iris 21. Ex. 64
- Forestry Pre. 1
- Form
  - not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.16
  - used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2.2, 2. Nt. 3
- Form (German), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 3
- forma* (f.), not equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 1

- Forma (Spanish), used as equivalent to “cultivar”  
2. Nt. 3 – generic name 24.1  
– may form cultivar 2.11
- Forme (French), used as equivalent to “cultivar”  
2. Nt. 3 – name 24  
– not a sexual hybrid 5.1  
– publication of names 25.3  
– recognition as cultivar 5.1  
– rejection of name 31.1
- Formula  
– condensed Div. III. 3, 5  
– graft-chimaera 24.1–2
- Forward slash, use in epithet 21.18
- Fractions, use in epithets 21.19
- French, equivalent of “cultivar” in  
2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3  
21.18, 35B.1
- Full stop (period) 21.18, 35B.1
- Fungi Pre. 7
- Future naming Pre. 4, Pre. 5
- Garden form 2. Nt. 3
- Gei 3. Nt. 2
- Gender, agreement in epithets in Latin form  
21.8–10
- Gene bank 30.2
- General provisions Div. II. Chap. I
- Generic designation 8. Nt. 1
- Generic name, graft-chimaera 24.1
- Generic trademark 8. Nt. 2
- Genetically modified plants 2.19, 2. Nt. 5
- Genus  
– hybrid, name of Div. III  
– name in Latin form 21.2
- Geographical sources 2. Ex. 10
- German, equivalent of “cultivar” in  
2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
- Germplasm, variation Div. V. Nt. 8
- Glendoick® 31. Ex. 4
- Gordianus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
- Gortel-1 2. Ex. 11
- Gp, as abbreviation of “Group” 15.2
- Graft, on rootstock 2.22
- Graft-chimaera 5  
– addition sign 24.2, 24.3  
– cultivar name 24.4  
– cultivars, indication of 14.2  
– definition 2.11, 5.1  
– distinctive from same component taxa 24.6  
– formula 24.1–2
- generic name 24.1  
– may form cultivar 2.11  
– name 24  
– not a sexual hybrid 5.1  
– publication of names 25.3  
– recognition as cultivar 5.1  
– rejection of name 31.1
- Graft-chimaera (intergeneric) Prin. 2  
– accepted name 11.1  
– citation of author 28.6  
– date of name 9.1  
– establishment of name 27.3  
– formation of name 24.3  
– name if derived from differing genera 24.3  
– name to differ from hybrid genus 24.3  
– publication of name and parentage 9. Nt. 1  
– same component genera 24.5  
– starting point for 18.3
- Grafting 2.1, 5.1
- Grammatical correctness Pre. 1, 35.11
- Graphical process 25. Nt. 1
- Grex 4  
– accepted name 11.1  
– and nothospecies, progeny of 23. Nt. 2  
– backcrossed 23. Nt. 1  
– competing names 29.2  
– definition 4.1  
– earliest established name 4.3  
– epithet not to be placed in round  
brackets (parentheses) 16.2  
– epithet used as Group epithet 22.6  
– Groups within 4.2  
– new name not to be established 4.3, 4.4  
– nomenclature governed by this *Code* Prin. 2  
– not equivalent to nothospecies 23. Nt. 1  
– only used in orchid nomenclature 4.1  
– parents 4. Nt. 1  
– publication of category, name and parentage  
9. Nt. 1  
– reciprocal cross 4. Nt. 2  
– recording trademarks Div. IV. 6  
– registration Prin. 8  
– restatement of parentage 4.4  
– starting point of names 18.2

*Subject index*

- status 16
- term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
- the word “grex” 16.1, 23.4, 23A.1
- translated 32. Nt. 1
- where parents synonymous 4.3
- Gre<sup>x</sup> epithet
  - abbreviation 35.9
  - capital letters 23.2
  - derivation 35.14
  - distinguished typographically 8.A.1
  - formation 8.4, 23.3
  - governed by this *Code*, not *ICBN* 1.2, 1A.1
  - hyphenation 35.11
  - offensive 21K.1, 31.8
  - rendered between alphabetic scripts 33.1
  - same as nothospecific epithet 23.5, 23. Nt. 3
  - styling 8.3
  - transcription 32.1, 34.1
  - translation 32.1
  - transliteration 32.1
  - with Group epithet 16.4
- Gre<sup>x</sup> name 8.2, 23
  - against wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
  - citation of author 28.2
  - conserved 12.1
  - date 9.1
  - definition 23.1
  - details to be stated on publication 27D.2
  - establishment 18.1, 27.3, 27.4
  - establishment, where parentage imperfectly known 27.4
  - “grex” or “gx” required in 16.3, 16.4
  - nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 3
  - registration Div. IV. 2
  - starting point 18.1
- Group 3
  - abbreviation of word 15.2
  - accepted name 11.1
  - assignment to more than one 3.4
  - circumscription redefined 3.5
  - competing names 29.2
  - criteria for forming 3.2
  - definition 3.1
  - divided 3.5
  - equivalent in other languages 15.1–2
  - equivalent terms 3. Nt. 1
  - formation of epithets 8.4, 22.4
  - formed from former taxonomic unit 3.3
  - formed from *gei* 3. Nt. 2
  - indication of status 15.1
  - judgement of merit or distinctness Div. IV. 5
  - more than one accepted name 11.4
  - new name to be provided 3.5
  - nomenclature governed by this *Code* Prin. 2
  - publication of category, name and circumscription 9. Nt. 1
  - recording trademarks Div. IV. 6
  - re-defined 3.5
  - status 15
  - term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
  - united with another Group 3.5
  - within grex 4.2
- Group epithet
  - abbreviation of 35.9
  - as part of cultivar name 15.3
  - confused with cultivar epithet 22A.1
  - correction of spelling 35.3, 35A.1
  - derivation 35.14
  - derived from grex epithet 22.6
  - distinguished typographically 8.A.1
  - equivalent to word in other languages 22.2
  - formation 8.4, 22.4
  - governed by this *Code*, not *ICBN* 1.2, 1A.1
  - hyphenation 35.11
  - in round brackets (parentheses) 15.3
  - Latin form 32. Nt. 2
  - offensive 21K.1, 31.8
  - rendered between alphabetic scripts 33.1
  - styling 8.3
  - transcription 34.1
  - translation 32.2
  - use of initial capital letters 22.3
  - with grex epithet 16.4
  - word “Group” part of 22.5
- Group name 22
  - acceptance of Div. IV. 1

- adopted from another language 32A.1
- against wishes of raiser or breeder 31.4
- based on epithet formed under *ICBN* 27E.1
- citation of author 28.2
- conserved 12.1
- date 9.1
- definition 8.1
- details to be stated on publication 27D.2
- establishment ensured Div. IV. 2
- establishment of 27.1, 27A.1
- nomenclatural standard Div. V. 1
- registration Prin. 8
- rejection 31.1
- re-use of epithets 30
- starting point 18.1
- Gx, the contraction 16.1, 16.3, 16.4, 23.4, 23A.1
  
- Habeas Corpus, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20
- Hand-copied books 25.2
- Hangeul 34. Ex. 2, 34C.1
- Hanyu Pinyin Fang’an 34B.1
- Heiti typeface 17. Ex. 2
- Hepburn (modified) system of Romanization 34D.1
- Herbarium, recognized Div. V. 14
- Herbarium specimen Div. V. 1
- expert preparation of Div. V. 14
- nomenclatural standard Div. V. 1
- Hiragana 34D.1, 34D.2
- Horticultural classification, Group used in 3.3
- Horticulture Pre. 1
- Human activity, intentional, plants resulting from Pre. 7, Prin. 2
- Hybrid
  - F1, forming cultivar 2.16
  - genus not to have same name as graft-chimaera 24.3
  - indication of Div. III. 2
  - names 1.3
  - names governed by *ICBN* Div. III. 1
  - term not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
  - used as equivalent to “Group” 3. Nt. 1
- Hybrid formula Div. III. 2
- Hybrid genus
  - derived from four or more genera Div. III. 5
  - derived from three genera Div. III. 6
  - derived from two genera Div. III. 4
  - description Div. III. 10
  - name Div. III
- Hybridization 1.3
- Hyphen
  - capital letters in words after 21.3
  - case after 35.12
  - erroneous use 35.14
  - use in epithet 21.18
- Ijsselham, in epithet 21. Ex. 7
- Illustration
  - in published journal as nomenclatural standard Div. V. Nt. 6
  - provision recommended 27C.1
- Illustrative material 27G.1
- Images
  - designated nomenclatural standards Div. V. 3
  - designated nomenclatural standards, copyright in Div. V. Nt. 4
  - digital Div. V. 3
  - printed from digital files as nomenclatural standards Div. V. Nt. 5
  - superseded by specimens Div. V. Nt. 7
  - “Improved”, not to be used in cultivar epithet 21.17
- Indelible autograph
  - definition 25.1, 25.3, 25. Nt. 2
  - graft-chimaera names published in 25.3
- India, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
- Intellectual property Prin. 6, 8. Nt. 1
- Intentional human activity, plants resulting from Pre. 7, Prin. 2
- International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (ICBN)* 1.1, Prin. 2
  - Appendix I (Names of hybrids) 1.3
  - citation of author’s name 28A.1
  - current edition Pre. 8
  - names in accordance with 1.1, 1A.1
  - names of hybrids 1.3, Div. III. 1
  - provisions for author citation 28A.1

*Subject index*

- relationship to *ICNCP* 1
- scope Prin. 2
- International Cultivar Registration Authority (ICRA)
  - acceptance by Div. IV. 5
  - application for starting point 18.1
  - appointment of Div. IV. 2
  - choice of names 29.2–3
  - definition Div. IV. 2
  - designation of accepted name 11.5, 11.7
  - permitting re-use 11.7
  - provisional listing by 27.6
  - receiving publications 25B.1
  - re-use of names 30.1–4
  - sending a specimen to 27G.1
  - trademarks Div. IV. 6
  - where no appropriate ICRA exists 11.6
- Interstem 2.22
- Intracellular organism, characters derived from 2.9
- ISHS Commission for Nomenclature and Cultivar Registration
  - and ICRA's Div. IV. 2
  - designation of starting point 18.1
  - special denomination class determined by 6.2
- ISO transliteration standards 33. Nt. 3, 33. Ex. 2, 33A.1
- Italics, in epithets 8A.1
- IUBS International Commission for the Nomenclature of Cultivated Plants
  - definitive ruling by 11.6, 11.8
  - modification of this *Code* Div. VI
  - no longer extant Div. VI
  - publication of decision 19.3
  - role in acceptance of disputed name 11.5, 11.6
  - ruling on conservation 11.6, 11.8, 12.1, 19.1
  - ruling on re-use 30.3
  - Secretary 19.2, 30.3
- Japanese, equivalent of “cultivar” in 2. Nt. 2
  - hand-copied books 25.2
  - horticulture, classes in 3. Nt. 2
- Julia, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
- Julius Caesar, as an epithet 21. Ex. 22
- Kanji 34D.1, 34D.2
- Katakana 34D.1, 34D.2
- Kenkyusha’s *New Japanese-English Dictionary* 34D.1
- Korea, Republic of, Ministry of Culture and Tourism 34C.1
- Korean
  - characters 34C.1
  - hand-copied books 25.2
  - transcription to Roman alphabet 34C.1
- Labels, publication by 25.1
- Language other than Latin
  - correct spelling in 35.2
  - Group name translated from 32.2
- Later name 11. Ex. 4, 21B.1, 31. Ex. 8, 31. Ex. 9
- Latin
  - name of genus in cultivar epithet 21.2
  - used in epithet 21.5, 21.6, 21.7, 21.11, 21.12, 21B.1, 32. Nt. 2, 35.1
  - words used in current language 21.12
- Legal conventions, word “variety” in 2. Nt. 4
- Legislation 10. Nt. 1
- Legislative texts 8. Nt. 1
- Letters, alternating with numbers 21.25
- Libraries 25.1, 25B.1
  - designated 25B.2, 26. Nt. 1
- Ligature, transcription of 35.7
- Line
  - definition 2.14
  - genetically modified 2. Nt. 5
  - may form cultivar 2.14
- Linguistic custom 21.3, 22.3, 23.2, 35.6, 35.9, 35.12, 35.13
- Linnaeus, *Species plantarum* 18.1, 18.3
- Lithography 25. Nt. 2
- Londinium, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23
- Lower-case “x” Div. III. 3
- Macron 34D.2
- “Maintenance”, not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17
- Major, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20

- Marketing device 13.1, Div. IV. 6  
 – name used as Prin. 6  
 Marston Magna, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23  
 Marylebone Cricket Club, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20  
 Mechanical process 25. Nt. 1  
 Metallic etching 25. Nt. 2  
 Microform, publication by 25.1, 25. Nt. 1  
 Micropropagation 2. Ex. 21  
 Minor, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20  
 Mister, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 19  
 “Mixture”, not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17  
 Modification, of this *Code* Pre. 6, Div. VI  
 Mons, as an epithet 21. Ex. 23  
 Monsieur, in cultivar epithet 35. Ex. 10  
 Monstrose plants 2. Ex. 20  
 Multiline  
 – definition 2.15  
 – genetically modified 2. Nt. 5  
 – may form cultivar 2.15  
 Multiplication sign Div. III. 2, 3  
 – before cultivar epithet 14.3  
 Museum, as an epithet 21. Ex. 20  
 Mutant tissue 2.1  
 Name 8  
 – accepted 11  
 – application made precise 30.5  
 – author’s, citation of 28  
 – availability for use Prin. 4, Prin. 6  
 – change, proper reasons for Pre. 9  
 – choice of 29  
 – common, of species, as cultivar epithet 21.22  
 – competing epithets 29.1  
 – compliance with this *Code* as condition of establishment 27.1  
 – components in italics 8A.1  
 – conservation of 19  
 – conserved 12  
 – contrary to this *Code* Pre. 9, 11.5, 12.1, 19.1, 31.1  
 – contrary to this *Code* but accepted by ICRA 19.1  
 – cultivar 21  
 – cultivar, general provisions 21. Sect. 1  
 – cultivar, in Latin form 21. Sect. 2  
 – cultivar, other provisions 21. Sect. 5  
 – date of 9.2, 30.5  
 – disputed 19.1  
 – earliest Prin. 3  
 – equivalent to “generic designation” 8. Nt. 1  
 – established 10  
 – for which no plants exist 27.7  
 – grex 8.2, 23  
 – Group 8.1, 22  
 – hybrid genera and application Div. III. 11  
 – hybrid genera and priority Div. III. 12  
 – hybrids between taxa 1.3, Div. III  
 – in non-Roman script 27F.1  
 – Latin form Pre. 8  
 – not accepted by author 27.6  
 – not validly published 21. Nt. 2  
 – obvious from context 21. Nt. 1, 22. Nt. 1  
 – of genus as cultivar epithet 21.20–21  
 – precedence Prin. 5  
 – presentation of Div. II. Chap. III  
 – published in anticipation Div. III. 14  
 – published without description 21. Nt. 2  
 – purpose of Pre. 1  
 – resurrecting long-forgotten or obsolete 29A.1  
 – trademark is not Prin. 6  
 – unnecessary creation of Pre. 1  
 – widely used but contrary to this *Code* 11.5–6  
 – without clear indication of rank 21. Nt. 2  
 – working 21C.1  
 – written in equivalent ways 8.1  
 Naming of plants, in cultivation 20  
 Naming of the past Pre. 4  
 National Aeronautical and Space Agency, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20  
 National legislation Prin. 5, 6. Nt. 1  
 National Listing Prin. 5  
*Nil desperandum*, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21  
*Noli me tangere*, as an epithet 21. Ex. 21  
 “Nomen nudum” 21. Ex. 12  
 Nomenclatural standard Div. V  
 – citation 29.3



*Subject index*

– citation of holder	Div. V. 7	– possessive	35.13
– citation of holding institution	27H.1	– qualified with adjective	21.1
– clonal cultivar	Div. V. 5	Nova Scotia, as an epithet	21. Ex. 23
– collections of	27G.1	Novel invention	21.14
– date of collection for	Div. V. 12	‘N!xau’	21. Ex. 31
– definition	Div. V. 1		
– designation	Prin. 9, 29.3, Div. V. 7	Objection	
– donation of material	Div. V. 14	– to designation of accepted name	11.8
– dried specimen	Div. V. 9	– to proposal for conservation	11.8
– duplicates	Div. V. 11	Obsolete names, resurrection of	29A.1
– earliest designated	Div. V. 8	Offence, epithet that might cause	21K.1, 31.8
– germplasm	Div. V. 6	Offset printing	25. Nt. 2
– illustration	Div. V. 3	Orchid cultivar epithet	
– image	Div. V. 3, Div. V. Nt. 5	– linked to grex	6.5
– in portfolio	Div. V. 10, Div. V. Nt. 4	– linked to species	6.5
– in special folder	Div. V. 9	Orchids	
– location of living material for	Div. V. 12	– denomination classes in	6.5
– more than one designated	Div. V. 8	– flower colours	Div. V. Ex. 3
– precedence	Div. V. 8	– names, starting point	18.2
– principle	Prin. 9	Organisms	
– purpose of	Div. V. Nt. 1	– intracellular characters derived from	2.9
– reference to	Div. V. Nt. 8	– traditionally treated as plants	Pre. 7, Pre. 8
– seed-raised cultivar	Div. V. 6	Original spelling, correction to	9.2, 35.11
– suitable	Div. V. 14	Origins, false impression as to	21J.1
– supporting nomenclatural type	Div. V. 4	Ortet	20. Ex. 2
– type specimen	Div. V. 2	Orthography	35
– variation in germplasm	Div. V. Nt. 8	Overscore	34D.2
– verification of	Div. V. 13		
– voucher specimen	Div. V. 2	Page number	27B.1
Nomenclatural type	Div. III. 11, Div. V. Nt. 1	Paintings	Div. V. Ex. 3
– designation of	Div. V. Nt. 1	Parentage	
– interpretation ambiguous	Div. V. 4	– assemblage based solely on	4.1
– precedence over nomenclatural standard	Div. V. 4	– details of, in nomenclatural standards	Div. V. 10
Nominant	27D.1	Parental genera	Div. III. 4
<i>Non sequitur</i> , as an epithet	21. Ex. 21	Parentheses	
Non-scientific newspapers	25.3, Div. III. 13	– grex epithet	16.2
Notho- (prefix), use of	Div. III Nt. 1	– Group epithet	15.3
Nothospecies		Paris Convention	31. Ex. 5
– not equivalent to grex	23. Nt. 1	Parkway®	31. Ex. 3
– where epithet same as grex epithet	23.5, 23. Nt. 3	Past naming	Pre. 4
Noun		Paulus, as an epithet	21. Ex. 22
– gender	21.1	Pedigree, effect on re-use of epithets	30.2
		Peninsula, as an epithet	21. Ex. 20

Period (full stop)	35B.1	Propagation	
– use in epithet	21.18	– appropriate means	2.3
Permission, to use names of living persons	21E.1	– different modes in cultivars	2.4
Personal initials, expansion in epithets	35.1	Proper nouns, in cultivar epithet	21.3
Personal names, in Latin form	21.12	Proposal, to accept disputed name	11.6
Persons, regard for	Pre. 1	Provenance, seed from particular as cultivar	2.13
Photographic image	Div. V. Ex. 3	Provisional listing, by ICRA	27.6
Photographic material	27G.1	Public herbarium	27G.1
Phytoplasma	2. Ex. 5	Public meeting, publication by	25.1
Pinyin	34B.1	Publication	Prin. 8, Div. II. Chap. VI
Pinzhong (Chinese), used as equivalent to “cultivar”	2. Nt. 2	– against wishes of raiser or breeder	31.4
Place names, in Latin form	21.12	– as condition of establishment	27.1
Plant Breeders’ Rights		– conditions of	25
– EU	Prin. 5, 17. Ex. 1, 27. Nt. 2	– date of, in descriptions	27B.1
– UK	11. Ex. 2	– definition	7.1, 25.1
Plant labels	13. Ex. 1	– designation of nomenclatural standard	Div. V. 7
Plant Variety Rights	Prin. 5	– hybrid genera	Div. III. 10
Plants		– in ephemeral material	25A.1
– brought into cultivation from the wild	20.1–2	– not permanently bound	26A.1
– identity of	Div. V. Nt. 2	– priority of	Prin. 3
Ploidy level, plants arising from change in	2.17	– reference to title	27B.1
Portfolio	Div. V. 10, Div. V. Nt. 4	– re-use where epithet rarely used in	30.2
Portuguese, equivalent of “cultivar” in	2. Nt. 2	– simultaneous	27.8
Possessive noun	35.13	– spanning more than one year	26.3
Potyvirus	2. Ex. 5	– to be dated	26.1
Prepositions, in cultivar epithet	21.3	Punctuation marks, in cultivar epithet	21.15, 21.18
Presentation of names	Div. II. Chap. III	Quotation marks	
Prevailing custom	Pre. 1	– alternatives to	14.1
Printed material		– single	14.1
– definition	25. Nt. 1	Raiser	
– ephemeral	25A.1	– as distinguishing device	30.5
Prior right, in conflict with established name	31.3	– false impression as to	21J.1
Priority		– name contrary to wishes of	31.4
– limitation of the Principle of	Div. II. Chap. IV	Ramet	20. Ex. 2
– names of hybrid genera	Div. III. 12	Range of variation	20.2
– Principle of	Prin. 3	Ras (Dutch), used as equivalent to “cultivar”	2. Nt. 2
Professor, abbreviation of	35. Ex. 19	Recommendations	Pre. 3
Prohibitions		– names contrary to	Pre. 5
– in cultivar epithets	21. Sect. 4	– their scope	Pre. 7
– punctuation marks in epithets	21.18		
– words in epithets	21.16–17, 21.20		

*Subject index*

– to be followed	Pre. 5	– object of	Pre. 4
Registrant		– scope	Pre. 7
– author of name	28.4	Russian, equivalent of “cultivar” in	2. Nt. 2
– definition	Div. IV. 8	Saint, abbreviation of	35. Ex. 19
Registrar, definition	Div. IV. 7	San language	21. Ex. 31
Registration	Div. IV	Scandinavian languages, equivalent of “cultivar” in	2. Nt. 2
– definition	Div. IV. 1	Scion	2.22
– of names contrary to this <i>Code</i>	Div. IV. 4	Seed, propagation from	2.12, 2.13
Rejection	31	Seed bank	30.2
– basis for proposal for	31. Nt. 1	Seed-exchange lists	25.3, Div. III. 13
– not permitted	31.2	“Selection”, not to be used as or in cultivar epithet	21.17
– of accepted cultivar name	11.2	Selections	3. Nt. 1
– publication against wishes of raiser or breeder	31.4	“Series”, not to be used as or in cultivar epithet	21.17
– under earlier editions	31.5	's-Hertogenbosch, in epithet	21. Ex. 7
Replacement		Silvicultural classification, Group used in	3.3
– name	31.3, 31.5, 31.6	Similarity, Group as category based on	3.1
– name, superfluous	31.7	Single quotation marks	14.1
– of accepted cultivar name	11.2	Sort, used as equivalent to “Group”	3. Nt. 1
Reproduction, agamospermous	2.18	Sort (Scandinavian and Russian), used as equivalent to “cultivar”	2. Nt. 2
Retroactive provisions	Prin. 11	Sorte (German), used as equivalent to “cultivar”	2. Nt. 2
Re-use		Spanish, equivalent of “cultivar” in	2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 3
– conditions for	30.2	Species, common name of	21.21
– confusion caused by	30.2	Spelling	35
– definitive ruling	30.3	– correction of	9.2, 35.3
– names	30	– corrections in non-Roman originals	35.2
– objection to	30.3	– epithets in Latin form	35.1
– subsequent re-use	30.4	– unintentional mistake	35.3
Roman alphabet	33A.1	– where epithets published under <i>ICBN</i>	35.1
– transcription from Chinese	34B.1	“Sport”, not to be used as or in cultivar epithet	21.17
– transcription from Japanese	34D.1	Stability	
– transcription from Korean	34C.1	– in naming	Pre. 1, Prin. 1, Prin. 8, Prin. 9
Roman numeral, in cultivar epithet	21.15	– of characteristics	2.3
Roman script, transliteration or transcription into	27F.1	Starting point	18
Romanization tables, ALA-LC	33A.1	– as condition of establishment	27.1
Romanized epithets, diacritical marks in	34D.2	– for cultivar and Group names	18.1
Rōmanji	34D.1	– for intergeneric graft-chimaeras	18.3
Rootstock	2.22	– for orchid grex names	18.1, 18.2
– clonal	21. Ex. 53		
Rule			
– absence of	Pre. 10		
– consequences of	Pre. 10		
– established custom	Pre. 10		

- Statutory plant registration authority  
 31.2, Div. V. 5, Div. V. 6  
 – definition Div. IV. 3  
 – establishment of names 27.5  
 – provisional listing of names 27.6  
 – rejection of names by 11.2  
 – re-use of names 30. Nt. 1  
 Statutory protection, lapse of 11.3  
 Statutory term, word “variety” as  
 “Strain” 2. Nt. 4  
 – not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.17  
 – used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2.2  
 Symbols, use in epithets 21.19  
 Synonym 11.2  
 – definition 13.2  
 – relation to trade designation 13.2  
 – treated as trade designation 11 Nt. 1  
 System of naming Pre. 1  
 Taxon Pre. 1  
 – at species rank or below reclassified as cultivar  
 21.2, 21.5, 21.6  
 – definition Pre. 1  
 – designation as Group 3.3  
 – name change 21.4  
 – name incorporated in cultivar epithet 29.4  
 – name used as Group or cultivar epithet 29.4  
 – no longer of value in botany 3.3  
 – no longer recognized 29.4  
 – nomenclatural type Div. V. Nt. 1  
 – reclassified as cultivar 21.5, 21.6  
 Taxonomic study Pre. 9  
 Teratological form 2. Ex. 20  
 Term, in Latin form 21.12  
 Termination –*ara* Div. III. 5–7, Div. III. 9  
 Tetraploid clone 2. Ex. 15  
 Theses, unpublished 25. Nt. 1  
 Topiary 2. Ex. 25  
 Topophytic clone  
 – definition 2.6  
 – may form cultivar 2.6  
 Topovariant, definition 2.13  
 Trade catalogue 25.3, 25B.1, Div. III. 13  
 – date of 26.3  
 – electronically published 25B.2  
 – electronically published, date of publication 26. Nt. 1  
 – no evidence of date 26.4  
 Trade designation 13  
 – application of Prin. 6  
 – cited with accepted name 17.2  
 – definition 13.1  
 – distinguished typographically 17.3  
 – from translated epithet 32. Nt. 1  
 – in Chinese 17. Ex. 2  
 – not a synonym 13.2  
 – not accepted name Prin. 6  
 – not supported by this *Code* Prin. 6  
 – placed within quotation marks 17.1  
 – recommended styling of 8. Nt. 3  
 – status 17  
 Trade list, publication by 25.1  
 Trademark  
 – accompanied by accepted name 8. Nt. 2  
 – genetically modified plants 2. Nt. 5  
 – in conflict with established name 31.3  
 – not to be confused with names Div. IV. 6  
 – recording of by ICRAs Div. IV. 6  
 – risk of becoming generic 8. Nt. 2  
 Transcription 34  
 – “#” 35.8  
 – “&” 35.8  
 – “ß” 35.8  
 – consistency in 34A.1  
 – corrections of spellings in 35.2  
 – cultivar or grex epithets 32.1  
 – ligature 35.7  
 – provided on establishment 27F.1  
 – recommended 27F.1  
 – reverse 34. Nt. 1  
 “Transformed”, not to be used as or in  
 cultivar epithet 21.17  
 Translation  
 – corrections of spellings in 35.2  
 – cultivar epithet 32.1  
 – discrepancies in Prin. 11  
 – epithets 32  
 – grex epithet 32.1

*Subject index*

- Group epithet 32.2
- of this *Code* Pre. 11, 2.2
- Transliteration 33
- corrections of spellings in 35.2
- cultivar or grex epithets 32.1
- provided on establishment 27F.1
- recommended 27F.1
- reverse 33. Nt. 1
- Trial, name used during 21C.1
- Turkish hazel 2. Ex. 24
- Type, used as equivalent to “Group” 3. Nt. 1
- Typescripts, publication by 25.1
- Typographic distinction, in trade designation 17.3
  
- Uncontrolled pollination 2.12
- UNESCO, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
- Uniformity
  - in characteristics 2.3
  - in naming Prin. 1, Prin. 8
- United Nations, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
- United Star Ship, abbreviation of 35. Ex. 20
- United States Library of Congress 33A.1
- United States Patent and Trademark Office
  - 28. Ex. 3, 31. Ex. 1, 31. Ex. 3
  
- Variation, range of 20.2
- Variedad (Spanish), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 2
- Variedade (Portuguese), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 2
- Varietàà (Italian), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 2
  
- varietas* (var.), not equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 1
- Varietàé (French), used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2. Nt. 2
- Variety
  - legal term 2. Nt. 4
  - not to be used as or in cultivar epithet 21.16
  - statutory term 2. Nt. 4
  - used as equivalent to “cultivar” 2.2, 2. Nt. 2, 2. Nt. 4
- Variety denomination 27. Nt. 1, Div. IV. 3
  - establishment of 27. Nt. 2
  - proposed 27. Nt. 2
- Veberöd 2. Ex. 11
- Vowel
  - connecting 24.3, Div. III. 4, Div. III. 6
  - diaeresis 35.5
  - pronounced long 34D.2
- Welsh language 32. Ex. 2
- Wild plants, brought into cultivation 20.1–2
- WIPO, as epithet 31. Ex. 5
- Witches’ broom 2. Ex. 4, 2. Ex. 5
- Word(s)
  - derivation of 35.14
  - in Latin form 21.12
  - novel invention of 21.14
  - prohibited in epithets 21.16–17, 21.20
- Working name 21C.1
- World Bank, as epithet 31. Ex. 5

## **INTERNATIONAL CODE OF NOMENCLATURE FOR CULTIVATED PLANTS – 2009**

The international rules for naming  
agricultural, forestry, and horticultural plants  
for use by everyone concerned with the  
accurate naming of plants.

Containing 11 appendices and a comprehensive glossary  
to provide guidance for those needing  
to form and maintain the correct names of cultivated plants and  
covering topics such as trade designations,  
new cultivar names, and conserved and rejected epithets  
this work provides

**an indispensable reference for:**

Plantsmen  
The nursery trade  
Raisers of new plants  
Germplasm collections  
Compilers of plant directories  
Authors and Editors  
Journalists  
Teachers and Lecturers  
Taxonomists  
Governmental bodies  
Trademark consultants  
Registration authorities

This edition (2009) replaces the previous edition (2004).

ISBN 978-90-6605-662-6



ISSN 1813-9205

ISBN 978 90 6605 662 6, *Scripta Horticulturae* Number 10